P-15 [™] User's Guide for Software Version 7.0



KLA-Tencor PN:0104396-000 AA

KLA-Tencor Confidential

EC COMPLIANCE

At the time of printing, the P-15 complies with the essential requirements of the EC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) Directives listed below

EC Directives	EC 89/392/EEC
	EC 89/336/EEC
	EC 73/23/EEC
Harmonized Safety Standards	EN 50082-2:1995
	EN 50081-2:1993
	EN 55011:1991
Harmonized Electromagnetic Standards	EN 60204-1:1992
	EN 61010-1:1993

COPYRIGHT

This document is a copyrighted work of KLA-Tencor Corporation. Unauthorized copying of its content is strictly prohibited. KLA-Tencor provides this document without warranty in any form, either expressed or implied. To order additional copies, specify part number 0104396-000 AA.

COMMENTS WELCOME

We welcome your comments about this document. Please e-mail them to Film and Surface Technology Technical Publications, or contact us at the address shown below. Please reference the document's part number in your communications.

Copyright $\textcircled{\mbox{\scriptsize opt}}$ 2002-2005 KLA-Tencor Corporation. All rights Reserved. Published March 2005

KLA-Tencor Corporation Film and Surface Technology Division 160 Rio Robles San Jose, California USA 95134 e-mail: gss.documentcontrol@kla-tencor.com

Printed in the United States of America Phone: 408-875-4200

List of Figures

Chapter 1 Introduction

Chapter 2 Basic Skills

Figure 2.1	Keyboard	2_2
Figure 2.2	Trackhall	2_3
Figure 2.2	Catalog Screen With Some Access Denied	2-5
Figure 2.4	Program Icons	2-6
Figure 2.5	Profiler Catalog Screen	2-6
Figure 2.6	Profiler Configuration Screen	2_8
Figure 2.7	Closing the Profiler Application Using the Control Button	2_8
Figure 2.8	Drofiler Container for Drofiler Shutdown	2.0
Figure 2.0	Start Menu	2.0
Figure 2.9	Shut Down Windows Dialog Dov	
Figure 2.10	Closing the Profiler Ambiation Using the Control Putton	2 10
Figure 2.11	Massage Day for Drofiler Shutdown	
Figure 2.12		
Figure 2.15 $\Gamma^2 = 2.14$	Start Menu $(1 - D)^{-1} = D^{-1}$	
Figure 2.14 Γ	Shut Down Windows Dialog Box	
Figure 2.15	Clearing the Status Diagnostic Messages	
Figure 2.16	Contact Scan Stylus Tip	
Figure 2.17	Scan Recipe Window in the Catalog Screen	
Figure 2.18	XY View Screen	
Figure 2.19	XY View Screen – View Menu	
Figure 2.20	Video Control Dialog Box	
Figure 2.21	Save Data Set Dialog Box	
Figure 2.22	Save Image As Dialog Box	
Figure 2.23	Export File Formats in Drop-Down Menu	2-21
Figure 2.24	Analysis Screen – File Menu	2-21
Figure 2.25	Export Graph Dialog Box	2-22
Figure 2.26	Catalog Screen – Database File Manager Icon	2-23
Figure 2.27	Data Catalog Screen for Export of Data or Recipes	2-23
Figure 2.28	Graphics Export Dialog Box	2-24
Figure 2.29	Scan Data Graph in the Analysis Screen	2-25
Figure 2.30	Choosing a Sequence Data Set	
Figure 2.31	Opening the Statistics Window to View Scan List	2-27
Figure 2.32	Surface Parameters Summary Window	2-27
Figure 2.33	Save As (Export) Dialog Box	
Figure 2.34	Data Catalog Screen for Export of Data or Recipes	2-29
Figure 2.35	Export Data Dialog Box	
Figure 2.36	Analysis Screen	
Figure 2.37	Print Dialog Box	
0	0	

Chapter 3 Scan Recipes

Figure 3.1	Catalog Sequence Recipe Screen	-2
Figure 3.2	Catalog Sequence Recipe Screen	-3
Figure 3.3	Title Bar for Catalog Screen	-4
Figure 3.4	Control Button Menu	-4

Figure 3.5	Menu Bar for Scan Recipe Screen	3-6
Figure 3.6	Tool Bar Icons	3-8
Figure 3.7	Scan Recipe information in the List Window	
Figure 3.8	Recipe Path Display	3-11
Figure 3.9	Tool Bar Buttons	3-11
Figure 3.10	System Status Message Field	3-13
Figure 3.11	Scan Recipe Catalog Screen	
Figure 3.12	Tool Bar	
Figure 3.13	Scan Recipe Catalog Screen	
Figure 3.14	Recipe Editor for a 2D UNTITLED Recipe	
Figure 3.15	3D Parameters in the Information Display Window	
Figure 3.16	2D Scan Category Parameters	
Figure 3.17	X Scan Size (mm)	
Figure 3.18	Scan Speed Drop-down Menu	
Figure 3.19	Scan Trace Comparison - Large vs. Small Stylus Radius	
Figure 3.20	Data Collection Frequency	
Figure 3.21	Data Collection When Using a Large Radius Stylus	
Figure 3.22	Data Collection When Using a Small Radius Stylus	
Figure 3.23	2D Scan Options With Sampling Rate Menu	
Figure 3.24	2D Scan Options With Multi-Scan Average Menu	
Figure 3.25	2D Scan Options With Scan Direction Arrow	
Figure 3.26	2D Scan Options - Show Position:	3-23
Figure 3.27	Teach Scan Length, from the 2D Scan Teach Button	
Figure 3.28	3D Scan Parameters	
Figure 3.29	Traces - Scan Perimeter with Traces	
Figure 3.30	3D Scan - Traces Parameter	
Figure 3.31	2D Scan Options - Show Position:	3-30
Figure 3.32	Teaching a Scan Position Using Center Show Position	
Figure 3.33	Teaching a Scan Position Using Start Show Position	3-31
Figure 3.34	Teaching a Scan Position Using Start Show Position	
Figure 3.35	Scan Time - Scan Parameters Definition	3-32
Figure 3.36	Individual Traces Calculation	3-33
Figure 3.37	Total (hr:min:s): Calculation - 3D Screen	3-33
Figure 3.38	Number of Data Points: Calculation - 2D & 3D Screens	
Figure 3.39	Point Interval: Calculation - 3D Screen	3-35
Figure 3.40	Stylus Parameters (2D and 3D)	3-35
Figure 3.41	Stylus Parameters - Scan Parameters Definition	
Figure 3.42	Stylus Parameters - With Applied Force Menu	
Figure 3.43	Recipe Editor - 3D Scan Parameter Definition	3-38
Figure 3.44	Vertical Ranging - Range/Resolution Menu	3-39
Figure 3.45	Vertical Ranging - Profile Types	3-41
Figure 3.46	Feature Detection - Recipe Editor	3-44
Figure 3.47	Feature Detection Point Locations on a Step	
Figure 3.48	Feature Detection Point Locations for Convex and Concave	3-45
Figure 3.49	Feature - Feature Detection - Recipe Editor	
Figure 3.50	Detection Variables - Feature Detection - Recipe Editor	
Figure 3.51	Scan Noise and the Gaussian Noise Filter	3-48
Figure 3.52	Activating the Gaussian Noise Filter	3-49
Figure 3.53	Filter Cutoff Menu	3-50
Figure 3.54	Filters/Cursors Parameters - Recipe Editor	3-51
Figure 3.55	Scan Noise and the Gaussian Noise Filter	3-51

Figure 3.56	Filters Parameters - Filter Option Menu	
Figure 3.57	Filters Parameters - Noise Filter Menu	3-53
Figure 3.58	Filters Parameters - Waviness Filter Menu	
Figure 3.59	Cursor Parameters - Recipe Editor	
Figure 3.60	Analysis Screen with Trace in Need of Leveling	
Figure 3.61	Leveling Cursors	
Figure 3.62	Cursor Boundary Setting on Unleveled Trace	
Figure 3.63	Setting Measurement Cursors	
Figure 3.64	Measurement Cursor on Level Trace	
Figure 3.65	Analysis Screen CALC Button	
Figure 3.66	Cursor Parameters - Recipe Editor	
Figure 3.67	Measurement Cursors - Relative to Feature Detection	
Figure 3.68	Cursor Parameters - Recipe Editor	
Figure 3.69	Median Filter Application in Glitch Removal	
Figure 3.70	2D and 3D Median Filter Options	
Figure 3.71	Recipe Screen with Unit Output Dialog Box	
Figure 3.72	Unit Output Dialog Box	
Figure 3.73	General Parameters - Recipe Editor	3-65
Figure 3.74	2D General Parameters	3-66
Figure 3.75	3D General Parameters	3-69
Figure 3.76	Waviness vs. Roughness	
Figure 3.77	Roughness/Waviness Filter Analysis	
Figure 3.78	Recipe Editor Showing 2D and 3D Roughness/Waviness Parameters	3-72
Figure 3.79	2D Roughness Parameters Options	3-73
Figure 3.80	2D Waviness Parameters	3-75
Figure 3.81	3D Roughness Parameters	
Figure 3.82	Bearing Ration and Cutting Depth Parameters	
Figure 3.83	Bearing Ratio	
Figure 3.84	2D Bearing Ratio	
Figure 3.85	Depth	
Figure 3.86	2D Cutting Depth (CutDp)	
Figure 3.87	Cutting Depth	
Figure 3.88	3D Bearing Ratio (Sbi)	
Figure 3.89	3D Material Volume	
Figure 3.90	Bearing Ratio and Cutting Depth Parameters	
Figure 3.91	High Spot Count	
Figure 3.92	2D High Spot Count (HSC)	
Figure 3.93	2D Mean Spacing Sm (1/HSC)	
Figure 3.94	Peak Count	
Figure 3.95	2D Peak Count (PC)	
Figure 3.96	2D Mean Spacing Sm (1/PC)	
Figure 3.97	Recipe Editor - Choosing 3D Cursors	3-89
Figure 3.98	Three Point Leveling Showing Leveling Boxes	3-90
Figure 3.99	Vertex Identification	
Figure 3.100	Matching Leveling Box and Cursor Locations	
Figure 3.101	3D Leveling Cursor	3-92
Figure 3.102	3D Measurement Cursor Box	3-93
Figure 3.103	Matching Measurement Cursor Position to Measurement Box	
Figure 3.104	3D Step Height Cursor Parameters	
Figure 3.105	Setup Analysis Tools – Leveling Reference	3-96
Figure 3.106	Data Point Distribution in Bins	

Figure 3.107	Histograms of Scans A and B	3-98
Figure 3.108	Multiple Bins (Mode) Used to Define a Plane	3-99
Figure 3.109	Flat Surface Scan of a Single Object	3-100
Figure 3.110	Most Populous Plane Trace Variation	3-100
Figure 3.111	Setup Analysis Tools Dialog Box	3-101
Figure 3.112	Enable Automatic Depth Analysis	3-102
Figure 3.113	Setup Analysis Tools – Leveling Reference	3-103
Figure 3.114	Setup Analysis Tools – Setting the Number of Bins	3-104
Figure 3.115	Histogram of a Scan	3-105
Figure 3.116	Recipe Editor - Recipe Menu	3-106
Figure 3.117	Diagnostic Options Dialog Box	3-107
Figure 3.118	High Resolution Camera Only: Diagnostic Options	3-107
Figure 3.119	Scan Options: Diagnostic Options	3-108
Figure 3.120	Linearity Calibration Only	3-109
Figure 3.121	Recipe Menu with Save and Save As Options	3-109
Figure 3.122	Catalog: Scan Data Screen	3-110
Figure 3.123	Analysis Screen	3-111
Figure 3.124	Save Recipe As - Improper Name Format	3-111
Figure 3.125	Recipe Message Box	3-112
Figure 3.126	Save Recipe As - Proper Name Format	3-112
Figure 3.127	Recipe Editor	3-112
Figure 3.128	Save Recipe As Dialog Box	3-113
Figure 3.129	Recipe Editor	3-113
Figure 3.130	Recipe Information Dialog Box	

Chapter 4 Stylus Change Procedure

Figure 4.1	Profiler [Catalog] - Click on the Calibration Icon
Figure 4.2	Configuration Screen
Figure 4.3	Proximity Sensor Configuration Dialog Box
Figure 4.4	Profiler [Catalog] - Click on the Calibration Icon
Figure 4.5	Stylus Force Calibration Button
Figure 4.6	Configuration Screen
Figure 4.7	Stylus ID Dialog Box
Figure 4.8	Message Box for Stylus Name Affirmation
Figure 4.9	Message Box for Stylus Change Permission
Figure 4.10	Supporting Stylus Mount During Stylus Change
Figure 4.11	Sensor Assembly - Loosening Stylus Clamp Screw
Figure 4.12	Sensor Assembly - Seating the New Stylus
Figure 4.13	Supporting Stylus and Mount During Tightening Procedure
Figure 4.14	Sensor Assembly - Seating the New Stylus
Figure 4.15	Message Box for Stylus Change Permission
Figure 4.16	KLA-Tencor Stylus Alignment Tool
Figure 4.17	Message Box Requesting SPO Standard Placement
Figure 4.18	Manual Load from the Scan Offset Calibration Window
Figure 4.19	Scan Position Offset Calibration Options dialog box
Figure 4.20	Window Buttons - OFF150- Recipe Editor
Figure 4.21	Scan Position Offset Calibration Options dialog box
Figure 4.22	Set Default Dialog Box
Figure 4.23	Scan Parameter DefinitionOFF150 - Recipe Editor
Figure 4.24	ZOOM IN - Scan Offset Calibration

Figure 4.25	View Menu with Align Sample Chosen	
Figure 4.26	Alignment Angle Dialog Box	
Figure 4.27	KLA-Tencor Stylus Alignment Tool	
Figure 4.28	KLA-Tencor Stylus Alignment Tool	
Figure 4.29	Aligning the Tool with Screen Crosshair	
Figure 4.30	Align Screen Crosshair with 150 mm Crosshair Pattern	
Figure 4.31	Manual Load from the Scan Offset Calibration Window	
Figure 4.32	Scan: _OFF150 Window	4-22
Figure 4.33	Trace Path Through Upper Triangle	4-22
Figure 4.34	Data Analysis Window.	
Figure 4.35	Scan Data Portion of the Analysis Window	4-23
Figure 4.36	Coarse Scan Data Analysis Window	
Figure 4.37	"Unknown Situation" Corrective Action	4-24
Figure 4.38	Pre Acceptance Analysis Screen	4-25
Figure 4.39	Analysis Screen with Cursors Manually Placed	
Figure 4.40	Scan Offset Calibration, Analysis Information Window	
Figure 4.41	Hand Selecting the Triangle Data in Analysis Screen	
Figure 4.42	Accepting Adjusted Scan Results	

Chapter 5 XY View Screen

Figure 5.1	Scan Recipe Window in the Catalog Screen	
Figure 5.2	XY View Screen	
Figure 5.3	XY View Screen Menu Bar	
Figure 5.4	Move Extents Dialog Box	
Figure 5.5	Move To Position Dialog Box	
Figure 5.6	Distance Dialog Box	5-9
Figure 5.7	View Menu and the Stage and Zoom Coordinate Field	
Figure 5.8	View Menu in XY Vies Screen	
Figure 5.9	Save Zoom Position Dialog Box	
Figure 5.10	MicroHead Measurement Head.	
Figure 5.11	Focusing the Optics (Dual-View Optics).	
Figure 5.12	Coordinate System of the KLA-Tencor Profiler Stage	
Figure 5.13	XY View Screen Tool Bar	
Figure 5.14	XY View Screen	
Figure 5.15	Teach Die Grid Screen with Loaded Die Grid	
Figure 5.16	Scan Catalog Screen	
Figure 5.17	Warning – Automatic Null	
Figure 5.18	Teach Die Grid Screen	
Figure 5.19	Teach Die Grid - Teach First Position	
Figure 5.20	Teach Die Grid - Teach Feature	
Figure 5.21	Wafer Data Dialog Box	
Figure 5.22	Teach Die Grid - Lower Right Corner	
Figure 5.23	Teach Die Grid - With Feature in Navigation Window	
Figure 5.24	Teach Die Grid - Die Grid Simulation in Navigation Window	
Figure 5.25	Save Die Grid As Dialog Box	
Figure 5.26	Sequence Editor with Die Grid Menu	
Figure 5.27	Load Sequence Die Grid	
Figure 5.28	Die Grid Menu From the Menu Bar	
Figure 5.29	Die Grid Navigation	
Figure 5.30	XY View Screen – View Menu	

Figure 5.31	Teach Center Object Window	5-33
Figure 5.32	Teach Center of Object Screen	5-34
Figure 5.33	Select Object Type Dialog Box	5-35
Figure 5.34	Arrow Button Movement - Scan Offset Calibration	5-36
Figure 5.35	Align Sample Procedure - Scan Offset Calibration	5-37
Figure 5.36	Setting Alignment Angle	5-37
Figure 5.37	Move Menu	5-39
Figure 5.38	Move Extent Dialog Box	5-39

Chapter 6 View Scan Window

Figure 6.1	2D Single Scan View Scan Window	
Figure 6.2	2D Sequence View Scan Window	
Figure 6.3	2D Scan Window - Scan Information Field	
Figure 6.4	2D Scan Window - Scan Information Field	
Figure 6.5	Scan screen - real time Trace Window	
Figure 6.6	2D View Scan Screen Menu Bar	
Figure 6.7	3D View Scan Screen During a Single Scan	
Figure 6.8	3D View Scan Screen During a Scan Sequence	
Figure 6.9	3D Scan Window - Scan Information Field	6-12
Figure 6.10	3D Scan Window - Scan Information Field	
Figure 6.11	View Scan Screen Menu Bar	
Figure 6.12	Scan screen - real time Trace Window	6-20
Figure 6.13	Top View Image of the 3D Scan In Progress	6-20
Figure 6.14	View Menu (Sequence Scan Screen)	6-21
Figure 6.15	Sequence Execution Options	
Figure 6.16	Sequence Scan Screen with Die Measurement Site Map	

Chapter 7 Sequence Recipe and Data (Optional)

Figure 7.1	Sequence Editor Screen	7-3
Figure 7.2	Sequence Editor – Sequence Menu	
Figure 7.3	Sequence Information Dialog Box	
Figure 7.4	Sequence Editor – Mode Menu	7-7
Figure 7.5	Sequence Editor – If Fail Menu	
Figure 7.6	Sequence Editor	
Figure 7.7	Data Options	
Figure 7.8	Sequence Editor	
Figure 7.9	Teach Location Window	7-13
Figure 7.10	Sequence Recipe Catalog Screen	7-14
Figure 7.11	Scan Sequence Catalog	
Figure 7.12	Sequence Editor for NEW Recipe with Pattern Recognition	
Figure 7.13	Options Section in the Sequence Editor	7-17
Figure 7.14	Die Grid Menu	7-17
Figure 7.15	Load Die Grid Dialog Box	
Figure 7.16	Sequence Editor	
Figure 7.17	Sequence Editor	7-19
Figure 7.18	Pattern Rec. Deskew Teach: Site 1 Screen	7-19
Figure 7.19	Deskew Options Dialog Box	
Figure 7.20	Data Options	7-21
Figure 7.21	Sequence Editor Set Up for New Recipe	7-22
Figure 7.22	Sequence Editor - Teach Scan Location	7-23

Figure 7.23	Teach Location for First Recipe Scan	
Figure 7.24	Sequence Editor	
Figure 7.25	Sequence Editor with Die Grid Menu	
Figure 7.26	Die Grid Menu	
Figure 7.27	XY View with Sequence Scan Sites	
Figure 7.28	Sequence Editor Message Box	
Figure 7.29	Sequence Editor with New Scan Sites	
Figure 7.30	Correlation Scan Sequence	
Figure 7.31	Correlation Sub-scan Window	
Figure 7.32	Sequence Parameter Data window	
Figure 7.33	Sequence Summary Options Dialog Box	
Figure 7.34	Manual Deskew Teach Window	
Figure 7.35	Deskew Options Dialog Box	
Figure 7.36	Profiler Sequence Editor Window	
Figure 7.37	Pattern Rec. Deskew Teach window	
Figure 7.38	Pattern Rec. Deskew Teach Window After Teach	
Figure 7.39	If Fail Menu in Options Portion of Sequence Recipe Screen	
Figure 7.40	Pattern Recognition and Deskew Options Dialog Box	
Figure 7.41	Groping Retry Layers	
Figure 7.42	Analysis Screen with File Menu	
Figure 7.43	Save Data Set Dialog Box	
Figure 7.44	Recipe Transport Options Configuration Screen Button	
Figure 7.45	Recipe Transport Options Dialog Box	
Figure 7.46	Browse Directories Dialog Box	
Figure 7.47	Recipe Transport Options with "If Existing File" Menu	
Figure 7.48	Calibration Screen	
Figure 7.49	Wafer Center Calibration Screen	
Figure 7.50	Sequence Recipe Catalog Screen	
Figure 7.51	Sequence Editor	
Figure 7.52	Handler Options Dialog Box - Load Options	
Figure 7.53	Handler Options Dialog Box - Manual Load/Unload Option	
Figure 7.54	The Sequence Menu	
Figure 7.55	Load Substrate Message	
Figure 7.56	Handler Options Dialog Box - Manual Load/Unload Option	
Figure 7.57	The Sequence Menu	

Chapter 8 Analyzing 2D Scan Data

Figure 8.1	Sequence Recipe Catalog	8-2
Figure 8.2	Scan Data Catalog	8-2
Figure 8.3	Scan Data Catalog	8-3
Figure 8.4	Thumbnail Display of Data Traces	8-4
Figure 8.5	Thumbnail Display of Data Traces	8-4
Figure 8.6	Data Before Leveling, with Leveling Cursors Visible	8-6
Figure 8.7	Screen Cursor Positioning	8-7
Figure 8.8	Double Cursor - Relocating the Entire Cursor	8-8
Figure 8.9	Delta Mode - Cursor Spread on a Scan Trace	8-9
Figure 8.10	Analysis Screen with Unleveled Trace and Level Cursors	8-10
Figure 8.11	Analysis Screen with Leveled Trace and Measurement Cursors	8-11
Figure 8.12	Analysis Screen's Cursors Settings	8-12
Figure 8.13	Accessing the Scan Recipe from the Analysis Screen	8-12

Figure 8.14	Recipe Screen - General Parameters Window	. 8-13
Figure 8.15	Exit Recipe Editor to Return to Analysis Screen	. 8-13
Figure 8.16	Analysis screen with Repositioned Cursors	. 8-14
Figure 8.17	CALC Button in Analysis Screen	. 8-14
Figure 8.18	Surface Parameter Summary Window	. 8-15
Figure 8.19	File Menu in Analysis Screen	. 8-15
Figure 8.20	Save Scan Data Dialog Box	.8-16
Figure 8.21	Analysis Screen with View Menu	.8-16
Figure 8.22	Setting Z Graph Limits	.8-17
Figure 8.23	Analysis Screen with View Menu	.8-17
Figure 8.24	Set Z Units Dialog Box	. 8-18
Figure 8.25	View Menu with FFT Chosen	. 8-18
Figure 8.26	Analysis Screen with a Normal Trace	. 8-19
Figure 8.27	View Menu	. 8-19
Figure 8.28	Normal Trace and Z Axis Logarithmic Scaling	. 8-20
Figure 8.29	Analysis Screen with the Zoom and Scale Function Buttons	.8-21
Figure 8.30	Analysis Screen Using Scaling Zoom	.8-21
Figure 8.31	Analysis Screen Using Boxed Zoom	. 8-22
Figure 8.32	Recalculate and Save Zoomed Leveling Cursors	. 8-23
Figure 8.33	Feature Detection - Recipe Editor	.8-24
Figure 8.34	Feature Detection Point Locations on a Step	. 8-25
Figure 8.35	Feature Detection Point Locations for Convex and Concave	. 8-25
Figure 8.36	Feature - Feature Detection - Recipe Editor	. 8-26
Figure 8.37	Detection Variables - Feature Detection - Recipe Editor	. 8-27
Figure 8.38	Scan Noise and the Gaussian Noise Filter	. 8-30
Figure 8.39	Activating the Gaussian Noise Filter	. 8-30
Figure 8.40	Filter Cutoff Menu	. 8-31
Figure 8.41	Feature Detection - Run 1 with Automatic Cursor Placement	. 8-32
Figure 8.42	Feature Detection - Run 2 with Automatic Cursor Placement	.8-32
Figure 8.43	Feature Detection - Run 3 with Automatic Cursor Placement	. 8-33
Figure 8.44	Effect of the Analog and Decimation Filters On Signal Transmission	.8-35
Figure 8.45	Defining a Band Pass With The Short-wave & Long-wave Cutoff Filters	.8-35
Figure 8.46	Effect of the Short-wave Cutoff Filter	. 8-36
Figure 8.47	Recipe Editor – Filters and Cursors Options	.8-36
Figure 8.48	Effect of the Long-wave Cutoff Filter	.8-37
Figure 8.49	Waviness Filter (Long Wavelength Cutoff Filter)	. 8-38
Figure 8.50	Signal Transmission Curves And Their Effects On Scan Data	. 8-38
Figure 8.51	Analysis Screen with Operations Menu	. 8-40
Figure 8.52	Analysis Screen with Operations Menu	.8-41
Figure 8.53	Right-Click Menu - Remove Glitches Menu Options	.8-41
Figure 8.54	Analysis Trace Window with Glitch Removed	.8-42
Figure 8.55	3D General Parameters - Recipe Editor	. 8-43
Figure 8.56	Arc Segment Dimensions	.8-44
Figure 8.57	General Parameters - Recipe Editor	.8-46
Figure 8.58	Feature Detection - Recipe Editor	.8-46
Figure 8.59	Cursor Options - Filters/Cursors - Recipe Editor	.8-47
Figure 8.60	Save Scan Data Dialog Box	.8-48
Figure 8 61	Scan Recipe Tool Bar for Analysis Editing	.8-49
0	1	

Chapter 9 Analyzing 3D Scan Data

T ' 0.1		0.0
Figure 9.1	Scan Catalog Screen with Scan Data Active.	. 9-2
Figure 9.2	Scan Catalog Screen with Scan Data Active.	. 9-2
Figure 9.3	3D Analysis Screen with 3D Object Displayed	. 9-3
Figure 9.4	Analysis Tool Bar Image Rotation Buttons	. 9-3
Figure 9.5	Manual Image Rotation Handles	. 9-5
Figure 9.6	Image Rotation Using the Rotate Image Menu	. 9-6
Figure 9.7	Right-Click Menu – Mouse Tools	. 9-7
Figure 9.8	Analysis Tool Bar Graphics Buttons	. 9-7
Figure 9.9	Analysis Screen - Tool Activation	. 9-8
Figure 9.10	Analysis Screen - Enable Zoom Tool	. 9-8
Figure 9.11	Analysis Screen - Zoom Active	. 9-9
Figure 9.12	Analysis Screen with Zoom Box	. 9-9
Figure 9.13	Analysis Screen – Using the Zoom In Icon	9-10
Figure 9.14	Analysis Screen – Zoomed In Area	9-11
Figure 9.15	Analysis Screen – Unzoom Using Right-Click Menu	9-11
Figure 9.16	Analysis Screen Menu Bar	9-18
Figure 9.17	Parameters Menu from the Analysis Screen Menu Bar	9-26
Figure 9.18	Catalog Screen – Scan Recipes	9-27
Figure 9.19	3D Recipe Editor	9-27
Figure 9.20	3D Recipe Editor with Roughness/Waviness Options	9-28
Figure 9.21	Bearing Ratio/Cutting Depth in Recipe Editor	9-29
Figure 9.22	Program Level Icons	9-34
Figure 9.23	Catalog Screen with Scan Recipe Chosen	9-34
Figure 9.24	3D Scan Catalog Screen	9-35
Figure 9.25	Recipe Editor - 3D Cursors Window	9-36
Figure 9.26	3D Line by Line Leveling Cursor Parameters	9-37
Figure 9.27	3D Line by Line Leveling Cursor Field	9-38
Figure 9.28	Line Leveling Top View Analysis Screen	9-39
Figure 9.29	Recipe Editor with 3D Cursors Window Displayed	9-39
Figure 9.30	Set Viewing Parameters Dialog Box	9-40
Figure 9.31	Line Leveling Dialog Box After Cursors Positioned	9-43
Figure 9.32	Image Arithmetic Dialog Box	9-44
Figure 9.33	3D analysis Screen with File Menu	9-45
Figure 9.34	Save Scan Data Dialog Box	9-46
Figure 9.35	Analysis Screen - Analysis Tool Bar	9-46
Figure 9 36	3D Analysis Tool Bar with Slice Tool Activated	9-47
Figure 9 37	Analysis Screen with View	9-47
Figure 9.38	Analysis Screen with Slice Tool Active	9-48
Figure 9 39	Analysis Screen with Both 2D and 3D Images	9_48
Figure 9 40	Analysis Screen with Both 2D and 3D Images	9_49
Figure 9 41	Analysis Window with File Menu	9_49
Figure 9.47	Save Scan Data Dialog Box	9_50
1 15010 7.72	Sure Sean Dan Dining Box	1 50

Chapter 10 System Security

Figure 10.1	Windows Screen START Menu	. 10-4
Figure 10.2	Programs Menu	. 10-4
Figure 10.3	Administrative Tools Menu	. 10-5
Figure 10.4	Windows Screen with Path to User Manager Screen	. 10-5
Figure 10.5	User Manager	. 10-6
Figure 10.6	User Manager	. 10-7

Figure 10.7	New User Dialog Box - Variables	10-8
Figure 10.8	New User Dialog Box - Variables	10-8
Figure 10.9	Group Membership Dialog Box	
Figure 10.10	User Manager	
Figure 10.11	User Properties Dialog Box	10-10
Figure 10.12	Group Membership Dialog Box	10-10
Figure 10.13	Group Memberships Dialog Box	
Figure 10.14	User Properties	
Figure 10.15	Calibrations Screen with Functions Grayed Out	10-12

Chapter 11 Configuration

Figure 11.1	Start Menu with Setting Menu Displayed	.11-3
Figure 11.2	Control Panel	.11-3
Figure 11.3	Date/Time Properties Window	.11-4
Figure 11.4	Choose Calibration	.11-4
Figure 11.5	Configuration Screen	.11-5
Figure 11.6	Stage Configuration Parameters	.11-6
Figure 11.7	Configuration - Theta Soft Home Position	.11-6
Figure 11.8	Teach Soft Home Position Screen	.11-7
Figure 11.9	Align Sample Procedure - Scan Offset Calibration	.11-8
Figure 11.10	Setting Alignment Angle	.11-8
Figure 11.11	Message Prompt After Alignment Angle is Set	.11-8
Figure 11.12	Message Prompt to Accept of First Alignment Location	.11-8
Figure 11.13	Message Prompt for Selecting Second Alignment Location	.11-9
Figure 11.14	Message Prompt to Accept Second Alignment Location	.11-9
Figure 11.15	Message Prompt to Accept the Alignment	.11-9
Figure 11.16	Configuration Screen - Lowest Elevator Position	11-10
Figure 11.17	Teach Lowest Elevator Position Screen	11-11
Figure 11.18	Configuration Screen - Lowest Elevator Position	11-12
Figure 11.19	Configuration Screen	11-14
Figure 11.20	System Configuration Dialog Box	11-14
Figure 11.21	Instrument Setup Dialog Box	11-15
Figure 11.22	Vacuum Options	11-16
Figure 11.23	Vacuum Feedback	11-16
Figure 11.24	Vacuum Options	11-17
Figure 11.25	System Configuration Summary Window	11-18
Figure 11.26	Registry Maintenance Dialog Box	11-19
Figure 11.27	System Configuration Dialog Box	11-20
Figure 11.28	Configuration Screen	11-21
Figure 11.29	Safe Area Configuration - Sample Configuration Menu	11-22
Figure 11.30	Safe Area Configuration Dialog Box	11-22
Figure 11.31	Safe Area Configuration - Edit Safe Area Values	11-23
Figure 11.32	Configuration Screen	11-24
Figure 11.33	Machine History Recorder Configuration Dialog Box	11-24
Figure 11.34	Machine History Recorder Configuration with Drop-Down Menu	11-25
Figure 11.35	Machine History Recorder Configuration Dialog Box	11-25
Figure 11.36	Configuration Screen	11-26
Figure 11.37	Enable New Options Dialog Box	11-27
Figure 11.38	Configuration Screen	11-28
Figure 11.39	Export Path Defaults	11-28

Figure 11.40	Configuration Screen	. 11-29
Figure 11.41	Pattern Recognition and Deskew Options Dialog Box	. 11-30
Figure 11.42	Groping Retry Layers	. 11-32
Figure 11.43	Pattern Recognition and Deskew Options Dialog box	. 11-33
Figure 11.44	Pattern Recognition and Deskew Options Dialog Box	. 11-34
Figure 11.45	Configuration Screen	. 11-35
Figure 11.46	Sequence Execution Options Dialog Box	. 11-35
Figure 11.47	Sequence Prompts Combo Box	. 11-36
Figure 11.48	ID Input Dialog Box	. 11-36
Figure 11.49	Sequence Execution Options	. 11-37
Figure 11.50	View Scan Display Settings	. 11-37
Figure 11.51	Automation Combo Box in Sequence Execution Options	. 11-38
Figure 11.52	Configuration Screen - Manual Load Position	. 11-38
Figure 11.53	Teach Manual Load Position	. 11-39
Figure 11.54	Teach Manual Load Position Screen	. 11-39
Figure 11.55	Configuration Screen - Proximity Sensor	. 11-40
Figure 11.56	Proximity Sensor Configuration	. 11-41
Figure 11.57	File Menu for Choosing Authorize Maintenance	. 11-43
Figure 11.58	Authorize Maintenance Dialog Box	. 11-43
Figure 11.59	File Menu for Change Password Dialog Box Access	. 11-44
Figure 11.60	Change Password Dialog Box	. 11-44
Figure 11.61	Closing the Profiler Application Using the Control Button	. 11-45
Figure 11.62	Profiler Container for Profiler Shutdown	. 11-45
Figure 11.63	Start Menu	. 11-46
Figure 11.64	Shut Down Windows Dialog Box	. 11-46
Figure 11.65	Catalog - Scan Recipe Screen	. 11-47
Figure 11.66	XY View Screen	. 11-48
Figure 11.67	Lightweight Stage Table Top	. 11-49
Figure 11.68	Precision Locator	. 11-49
Figure 11.69	Three Point Disk Locator	. 11-50
Figure 11.70	Catalog - Scan Recipe Screen	. 11-51
Figure 11.71	XY View Screen	. 11-51
Figure 11.72	Three Point Disk Locator Base Plate	. 11-52
Figure 11.73	Center Hub Screw	. 11-52
Figure 11.74	Disk Support for the Three Point Disk Locator	. 11-53

Chapter 12 Calibrations

File Menu for Choosing Authorize Maintenance	12-2
Authorize Maintenance Dialog Box	12-2
File Menu for Change Password Dialog Box Access	12-3
Change Password Dialog Box	12-3
Catalog Screen - Choose Calibration	
Calibrations Screen	
Applied Force Calibration Window	
Catalog Screen - Choose Calibration	
Calibrations Screen- Accessing the Video Calibration	
Manual Load from the Video Calibration Screen	12-7
Message Prompt and Focus Button	
XY Video Display Message Box	
KLA-Tencor Stylus Alignment Tool	12-11
	File Menu for Choosing Authorize MaintenanceAuthorize Maintenance Dialog BoxFile Menu for Change Password Dialog Box AccessChange Password Dialog BoxCatalog Screen - Choose CalibrationCalibrations ScreenApplied Force Calibration WindowCatalog Screen - Choose CalibrationCatalog Screen - Choose CalibrationCatalog Screen - Choose CalibrationManual Screen - Choose CalibrationManual Load from the Video Calibration ScreenMessage Prompt and Focus ButtonXY Video Display Message BoxKLA-Tencor Stylus Alignment Tool

Figure 12.14	Manual Load from the Scan Offset Calibration Window	.12-12
Figure 12.15	Catalog Screen - Click on the Calibration Icon	.12-12
Figure 12.16	Scan Calibrations Screen	.12-13
Figure 12.17	Scan Position Offset Calibration Options dialog box	.12-14
Figure 12.18	Window Buttons - COARSE - Recipe Editor	. 12-15
Figure 12.19	Scan Position Offset Calibration Options dialog box	.12-16
Figure 12.20	Set Default Dialog Box	.12-16
Figure 12.21	Scan Parameter Definition - OFF150 - Recipe Editor	.12-17
Figure 12.22	View Menu with Align Sample Chosen	12-18
Figure 12.23	Alignment Angle Dialog Box	12-18
Figure 12.23	KLA-Tencor Stylus Alignment Tool	12-19
Figure 12.21	KLA-Tencor Stylus Alignment Tool	12-20
Figure 12.25	Aligning the Tool with Screen Crossbair	12-20
Figure 12.20	Align Screen Crosshair with 150 mm Crosshair Pattern	12_20
Figure 12.27	Manual Load from the Scan Offset Calibration Window	12-21
Figure 12.20	Scan: OFF150 Window	12-21
Figure 12.29	Trace Dath Through the Triangle	12-22
Figure 12.30	Dete Analysia Window	12-22
Figure 12.51	Coor Data Dertion of the Analysis Window	.12-23
Figure 12.52	Scan Data Portion of the Analysis window	.12-23
Figure 12.33 E^2	150 mm Scan Data Analysis window	.12-24
Figure 12.34	"Unknown Situation" Corrective Action	. 12-24
Figure 12.35	Angle Features on the Stylus Alignment Tool	. 12-25
Figure 12.36	KLA-Iencor Stylus Alignment I ool	. 12-26
Figure 12.37	Angle Features	. 12-26
Figure 12.38	Scan Information Display in Analysis Screen	. 12-28
Figure 12.39	Step Height Calibration Factors	.12-29
Figure 12.40	Navigation Window Right-Click Menu	.12-30
Figure 12.41	Move To Position Dialog Box	. 12-30
Figure 12.42	Calibration Menu in the Calibration Screen	. 12-31
Figure 12.43	Step Height Calibration Options Dialog Box	.12-31
Figure 12.44	Multi-Scan Average Option	. 12-32
Figure 12.45	Setting Standard Step Height Value	. 12-32
Figure 12.46	Confirming the Displayed Calibration Recipe	. 12-33
Figure 12.47	"Copy default to custom recipe?" Message	.12-34
Figure 12.48	Changing the Calibration Recipe Option to Default	.12-34
Figure 12.49	Changing the Calibration Recipe Option to Custom	.12-35
Figure 12.50	Recipe Editor for _STEPHTL	.12-36
Figure 12.51	Stylus Force Change Message	.12-37
Figure 12.52	Recipe Editor - Saving Recipe Changes	.12-37
Figure 12.53	Completing the Options Selection	.12-38
Figure 12.54	Loading the Step Height Calibration Standard	.12-38
Figure 12.55	Step Height Calibration Window	.12-39
Figure 12.56	Step Height Scan Screen	.12-40
Figure 12.57	Saving the New Calibration	.12-41
Figure 12.58	Calibration Screen	.12-42
Figure 12.59	Level Calibration Warning	.12-43
Figure 12.60	Tilt Calibration System Status Load Wafer Message	. 12-43
Figure 12.61	Tilt Axis Angle Calibration Value Dialog Box	. 12-44
Figure 12.67	Activating Focus in the XY VIEW Screen	12-45
Figure 12.02	Move To Menu	12-45
Figure 12.05	Move To Position Dialog Box	12-45
- 19410 12.07	Lieve is i obtain Dimog Boa	• • • • • • • •

Figure 12.65	Teach Lowest Elevator Position Screen	12-46
Figure 12.66	Move To Menu	12-46
Figure 12.67	Move To Position Dialog Box	12-47
Figure 12.68	Calibration Screen	12-48
Figure 12.69	Wafer Center Calibration Screen	12-49

Chapter 13 GEM/SECS Option

Figure 13.2Configuration Screen13-2Figure 13.3Machine Configuration Dialog box13-3Figure 13.4Instrument Setup Dialog Box13-3Figure 13.5Configuration Warning13-3Figure 13.6Configuration Screen – Opening GEM/SECS Communication13-4Figure 13.7GEM User Interface Screen (Top of Screen)13-4Figure 13.8Configuration Screen – Opening GEM/SECS Communication13-5Figure 13.9GEM User Interface Screen13-6Figure 13.10Configuration Screen – Opening GEM/SECS Communication13-5Figure 13.11Configuration Screen13-6Figure 13.12Communication Option - Initial Communication States13-7Figure 13.13Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.14Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.15Control States Option13-9Figure 13.16GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.17GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.18GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Iterminal13-14Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Iterminal13-15Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.23Trace Configuration Dialog Box13-16Figure 13.24GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.27Seend	Figure 13.1	Database File Manager Icon Choice	13-1
Figure 13.3Machine Configuration Dialog box13-2Figure 13.4Instrument Setup Dialog Box13-3Figure 13.5Configuration Warning13-3Figure 13.6Configuration Screen – Opening GEM/SECS Communication13-4Figure 13.7GEM User Interface Screen (Top of Screen)13-4Figure 13.7GEM User Interface Screen – Opening GEM/SECS Communication13-5Figure 13.9GEM User Interface Screen13-5Figure 13.10GEM User Interface Screen13-6Figure 13.11Configuration Screen13-6Figure 13.12Communication Option - Initial Communication States13-7Figure 13.12Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.15Control States Option13-9Figure 13.16GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.17GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.18GEM Configuration - Equipment Identification13-12Figure 13.19GEM Configuration - Equipment Identification13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Equipment Identification13-14Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Comminal13-13Figure 13.22GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.23GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.24GEM Configuration - Terminal13-15Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.27GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.28 <t< td=""><td>Figure 13.2</td><td>Configuration Screen</td><td> 13-2</td></t<>	Figure 13.2	Configuration Screen	13-2
Figure 13.4Instrument Setup Dialog Box13-3Figure 13.5Configuration Warning13-3Figure 13.6Configuration Screen – Opening GEM/SECS Communication13-4Figure 13.7GEM User Interface Screen (Top of Screen)13-4Figure 13.8Configuration Screen – Opening GEM/SECS Communication13-5Figure 13.9GEM User Interface Screen13-6Figure 13.10Get User Interface Screen13-6Figure 13.11Configuration Screen13-6Figure 13.12Communication Option - Initial Communication States13-7Figure 13.13Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.14Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.15Control States Option13-9Figure 13.16GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.17GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.18GEM Configuration - Spooling13-13Figure 13.19GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Alarms13-13Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Alarms13-14Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.23GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.24GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.29View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-18Figure 13.20GEM Status Window13-19	Figure 13.3	Machine Configuration Dialog box	13-2
Figure 13.5Configuration Warning13-3Figure 13.6Configuration Screen – Opening GEM/SECS Communication13-4Figure 13.7GEM User Interface Screen (Top of Screen)13-4Figure 13.8Configuration Screen – Opening GEM/SECS Communication13-5Figure 13.9GEM User Interface Screen13-6Figure 13.10GEM User Interface Screen13-6Figure 13.11Configuration Screen13-6Figure 13.12Communication Option - Initial Communication States13-7Figure 13.12Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.14Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.15Control States Option13-9Figure 13.16GEM Configuration - Poll Delay13-18Figure 13.17GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.18GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.19GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.24GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack Rost TTY Msg Window13-19F	Figure 13.4	Instrument Setup Dialog Box	13-3
Figure 13.6Configuration Screen – Opening GEM/SECS Communication13-4Figure 13.7GEM User Interface Screen (Top of Screen)13-4Figure 13.8Configuration Screen – Opening GEM/SECS Communication13-5Figure 13.9GEM User Interface Screen13-6Figure 13.10GEM User Interface Screen13-6Figure 13.11Configuration Screen13-6Figure 13.12Communication Option - Initial Communication States13-7Figure 13.13Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.14Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.15Control States Option13-9Figure 13.16GEM Configuration - Online Failed State:13-10Figure 13.16GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.17GEM Configuration - Spooling13-13Figure 13.18GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Terminal13-13Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.23GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.24GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.29View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-18Figure 13.29View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.30Database Catalog Screen - GEM Status13-20Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20F	Figure 13.5	Configuration Warning	13-3
Figure 13.7GEM User Interface Screen (Top of Screen)13-4Figure 13.8Configuration Screen – Opening GEM/SECS Communication13-5Figure 13.9GEM User Interface Screen13-6Figure 13.10GEM User Interface Screen13-6Figure 13.11Configuration Screen13-6Figure 13.12Communication Option - Initial Communication States13-7Figure 13.13Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.14Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.15Control States Option13-9Figure 13.16GEM Configuration - Online Failed State:13-10Figure 13.17GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.19GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Alarms13-13Figure 13.21GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.23GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.24GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-19Figure 13.28GEM Status View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.30Database Catalog Screen13-20Figure 13.31Upload Window13-22Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-22Figure 13.33Upload Window13-22Figure 13.34Database Crealog Screen13-20	Figure 13.6	Configuration Screen – Opening GEM/SECS Communication	13-4
Figure 13.8Configuration Screen – Opening GEM/SECS Communication13-5Figure 13.9GEM User Interface Screen13-5Figure 13.10GEM User Interface Screen13-6Figure 13.11Configuration Screen13-6Figure 13.12Communication Option - Initial Communication States13-7Figure 13.13Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.14Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.15Control States Option13-9Figure 13.16GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.17GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.18GEM Configuration - Equipment Identification13-12Figure 13.19GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Alarms13-13Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.23Trace Configuration Dialog Box13-16Figure 13.24GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-19Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.29Database Catalog Screen13-20Figure 13.31Database Catalog Screen13-22Figure 13.33Upload Window <t< td=""><td>Figure 13.7</td><td>GEM User Interface Screen (Top of Screen)</td><td> 13-4</td></t<>	Figure 13.7	GEM User Interface Screen (Top of Screen)	13-4
Figure 13.9GEM User Interface Screen13-5Figure 13.10GEM User Interface Screen13-6Figure 13.11Configuration Screen13-6Figure 13.12Communication Option - Initial Communication States13-7Figure 13.13Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.14Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.15Control States Option13-9Figure 13.16GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.17GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.18GEM Configuration - Equipment Identification13-12Figure 13.19GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.23Trace Configuration Dialog Box13-16Figure 13.24GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.30Database Catalog Screen.13-20Figure 13.31Database Catalog Screen.13-22Figure 13.33Upload Window13-22Figure 13.34Database Catalog Screen.13-22Figure 13.35Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Fi	Figure 13.8	Configuration Screen – Opening GEM/SECS Communication	13-5
Figure 13.10 GEM User Interface Screen 13-6 Figure 13.11 Configuration Screen 13-6 Figure 13.12 Communication Option - Initial Communication States 13-7 Figure 13.12 Communication Option - Poll Delay 13-8 Figure 13.14 Communication Option - Poll Delay 13-8 Figure 13.15 Control States Option 13-9 Figure 13.16 GEM Configuration - Spooling 13-10 Figure 13.17 GEM Configuration - Event Reports 13-13 Figure 13.20 GEM Configuration - Event Reports 13-13 Figure 13.21 GEM Configuration - Terminal 13-14 Figure 13.22 GEM Configuration - Terminal 13-15 Figure 13.23 Trace Configuration Dialog Box 13-16 Figure 13.24 GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status 13-16 Figure 13.25 GEM Status Window 13-18 Figure 13.26 GEM Status Window 13-18 Figure 13.27 Send TTY Message Window 13-18 Figure 13.28 GEM Status Window 13-19 Figure 13.29 View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window 13-19 Fi	Figure 13.9	GEM User Interface Screen	13-5
Figure 13.11Configuration Screen13-6Figure 13.12Communication Option - Initial Communication States13-7Figure 13.13Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.14Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.15Control States Option13-9Figure 13.16GEM Configuration - Online Failed State:13-10Figure 13.17GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.18GEM Configuration - Equipment Identification13-12Figure 13.19GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Alarms13-13Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.23Trace Configuration Dialog Box13-16Figure 13.24GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-19Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-22Figure 13.33Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.34Pid Window13-23Figure 13.35Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.36 <td>Figure 13.10</td> <td>GEM User Interface Screen</td> <td> 13-6</td>	Figure 13.10	GEM User Interface Screen	13-6
Figure 13.12Communication Option - Initial Communication States13-7Figure 13.13Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.14Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.15Control States Option13-9Figure 13.16GEM Configuration - Online Failed State:13-10Figure 13.17GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.18GEM Configuration - Equipment Identification13-12Figure 13.19GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Alarms13-13Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.23GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.24GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Vindow13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Database Catalog Screen13-20Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-21Figure 13.33Upload Window13-22Figure 13.34Database Screen - PTransfer Menu13-22Figure 13.35Pid Window13-22Figure 13.36Pid Window13-23Figure 13.36Pid Window13-22	Figure 13.11	Configuration Screen	13-6
Figure 13.13Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.14Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.15Control States Option13-9Figure 13.16GEM Configuration - Online Failed State:13-10Figure 13.17GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.18GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.22GEM Configuration - Terminal13-15Figure 13.23Trace Configuration Dialog Box13-16Figure 13.24GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Upload Window13-22Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-22Figure 13.34Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.35Pidu Window13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.12	Communication Option - Initial Communication States	13-7
Figure 13.14Communication Option - Poll Delay13-8Figure 13.15Control States Option13-9Figure 13.16GEM Configuration - Online Failed State:13-10Figure 13.17GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.18GEM Configuration - Equipment Identification13-12Figure 13.19GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Alarms13-13Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.23Trace Configuration Dialog Box13-16Figure 13.24GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Database Catalog Screen.13-22Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-22Figure 13.34Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.13	Communication Option - Poll Delay	13-8
Figure 13.15Control States Option13-9Figure 13.16GEM Configuration - Online Failed State:13-10Figure 13.17GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.18GEM Configuration - Equipment Identification13-12Figure 13.19GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Alarms13-13Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.22GEM Configuration - Terminal13-15Figure 13.23Trace Configuration Dialog Box13-15Figure 13.24GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-22Figure 13.35Database Srie Mindow13-22Figure 13.34Database Srie Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Srie Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.34Database Srie Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Srie Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Srie Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.36Pid Window13-23Figure 13.35Database Srie PPTransf	Figure 13.14	Communication Option - Poll Delay	13-8
Figure 13.16GEM Configuration - Online Failed State:13-10Figure 13.17GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.18GEM Configuration - Equipment Identification13-12Figure 13.19GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Alarms13-13Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.24GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.34Upload Window13-22Figure 13.35Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.34Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.35Ppid Window13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.15	Control States Option	13-9
Figure 13.17GEM Configuration - Spooling13-11Figure 13.18GEM Configuration - Equipment Identification13-12Figure 13.19GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Alarms13-13Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.23Trace Configuration Dialog Box13-16Figure 13.24GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.33Upload Window13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.34Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.16	GEM Configuration - Online Failed State:	13-10
Figure 13.18GEM Configuration - Equipment Identification13-12Figure 13.19GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Alarms13-13Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.23Trace Configuration Dialog Box13-15Figure 13.24GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-12Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Upload Window13-21Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.17	GEM Configuration - Spooling	13-11
Figure 13.19GEM Configuration - Event Reports13-13Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Alarms13-13Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.23Trace Configuration Dialog Box13-15Figure 13.24GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Upload Window13-21Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.34Phid Window13-23Figure 13.35Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.18	GEM Configuration - Equipment Identification	13-12
Figure 13.20GEM Configuration - Alarms13-13Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.23Trace Configuration Dialog Box13-15Figure 13.24GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-21Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.19	GEM Configuration - Event Reports	13-13
Figure 13.21GEM Configuration - Terminal13-14Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.23Trace Configuration Dialog Box13-15Figure 13.24GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-21Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.34Phid Mindow13-23Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.20	GEM Configuration - Alarms	13-13
Figure 13.22GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration13-15Figure 13.23Trace Configuration Dialog Box13-15Figure 13.24GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-21Figure 13.33Upload Window13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.21	GEM Configuration - Terminal	13-14
Figure 13.23Trace Configuration Dialog Box13-15Figure 13.24GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Database Catalog Screen.13-21Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.22	GEM User Interface Screen - Trace Configuration	13-15
Figure 13.24GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status13-16Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Database Catalog Screen.13-20Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-21Figure 13.33Upload Window13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.34Phid Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.34Pidabase File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.23	Trace Configuration Dialog Box	13-15
Figure 13.25GEM Status Window13-16Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Database Catalog Screen.13-20Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-21Figure 13.33Upload Window13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.24	GEM User Interface Screen - GEM Status	13-16
Figure 13.26GEM Status Window13-18Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Database Catalog Screen.13-20Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-21Figure 13.33Upload Window13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.25	GEM Status Window	13-16
Figure 13.27Send TTY Message Window13-18Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Database Catalog Screen.13-20Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-21Figure 13.33Upload Window13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.26	GEM Status Window	13-18
Figure 13.28GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window13-19Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Database Catalog Screen.13-20Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-21Figure 13.33Upload Window13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.27	Send TTY Message Window	13-18
Figure 13.29View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window13-19Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Database Catalog Screen.13-20Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-21Figure 13.33Upload Window13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.28	GEM Status - View and Ack Host TTY Msg Window	13-19
Figure 13.30Database File Manager Icon Choice13-20Figure 13.31Database Catalog Screen.13-20Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-21Figure 13.33Upload Window13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.29	View and Ack TTY Msg from Host Window	13-19
Figure 13.31Database Catalog Screen.13-20Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-21Figure 13.33Upload Window13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.30	Database File Manager Icon Choice	13-20
Figure 13.32Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows13-21Figure 13.33Upload Window13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.31	Database Catalog Screen.	13-20
Figure 13.33Upload Window13-22Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.32	Scan and Sequence Recipe Windows	13-21
Figure 13.34Database File Manager Icon Choice13-22Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.33	Upload Window	13-22
Figure 13.35Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu13-23Figure 13.36PPid Window13-23	Figure 13.34	Database File Manager Icon Choice	13-22
Figure 13.36 PPid Window 13-23	Figure 13.35	Database Screen - PPTransfer Menu	13-23
	Figure 13.36	PPid Window	13-23

Chapter 14 Wafer Stress Application Option

Figure 14.1	13 Point Least Square Fit Calculation Illustration	14-4
Figure 14.2	Stress Recipe Name Assignment Dialog Box	. 14-5
Figure 14.3	Catalog Screen – Choosing the Stress Application	. 14-6
Figure 14.4	Stress Screen with Substrate Menu	14-6
Figure 14.5	Precision Locator on the Stage	. 14-7

Figure 14.6	Catalog Screen – Choosing the Stress Application	14-7
Figure 14.7	Stress Application Screen	14-8
Figure 14.8	Stress Recipe List Area	14-8
Figure 14.9	Function Buttons in the Stress Recipe Screen	14-9
Figure 14.10	Stress Screen with the Scan Data Catalog Displayed	. 14-10
Figure 14.11	Scan Data Information in the Stress Data Catalog	. 14-10
Figure 14.12	Stress Calculation Function and Set-Up	. 14-11
Figure 14.13	Stress Application Screen	. 14-12
Figure 14.14	Stress Recipe Editor Window	. 14-13
Figure 14.15	Catalog Screen – Choosing the Stress Application	. 14-13
Figure 14.16	Stress Application Screen	. 14-14
Figure 14.17	Stress Recipe Name Dialog Box.	. 14-14
Figure 14.18	Stress Screen with Stress Recipe Editor Open	. 14-15
Figure 14.19	Saving Recipe Parameters Dialog Box	. 14-15
Figure 14.20	Stress Recipe Name	. 14-16
Figure 14.21	Number of Stress Points	. 14-16
Figure 14.22	Scan Start Position	. 14-17
Figure 14.23	Scan Parameters	. 14-17
Figure 14.24	Substrate Specification	. 14-18
Figure 14.25	Stress Calculation Method	. 14-20
Figure 14.26	Stress Screen With Recipe Menu	. 14-21
Figure 14.27	Stress Recipe Name Dialog Box.	. 14-21
Figure 14.28	Printer Icon in Tool Bar	. 14-22
Figure 14.29	Stress Application Screen	. 14-23
Figure 14.30	Stress Recipe List Area	. 14-24
Figure 14.31	Stress Recipe Catalog Screen	. 14-24
Figure 14.32	Scan ID Dialog Box	. 14-25
Figure 14.33	Scan Screen with Real Time Scan Trace	. 14-25
Figure 14.34	Stress Scan Analysis Screen	. 14-26
Figure 14.35	Stress Screen with Scan Data Catalog Displayed	. 14-27
Figure 14.36	Stress Screen with Stress Data File	. 14-28
Figure 14.37	Stress Screen with Scan Data Catalog Displayed	. 14-29
Figure 14.38	Calculation Warning for Mismatched Recipes	. 14-30
Figure 14.39	Film Thickness Dialog Box	. 14-30
Figure 14.40	Polynomial Calculation Results	. 14-30
Figure 14.41	Stress Calculation Analysis Screen	. 14-31
Figure 14.42	Polynomial Calculation Results	. 14-31
Figure 14.43	Stress Calculation Results Box	. 14-32

Chapter 15 CMP Analysis Algorithms

Figure 15.1	Sample Array	15-2
Figure 15.2	Sample Array of Lines	15-3
Figure 15.3	Sample Pad	15-5
Figure 15.4	Setup Analysis Tools Dialog Box	15-6
Figure 15.5	CMP Analysis Setup Page	15-7
Figure 15.6	CMP Analysis Setup for Pads Analysis	15-8
Figure 15.7	Sequence Recipe Catalog Screen	15-9
Figure 15.8	Analysis Screen for Sequence with CMP Analysis	. 15-10
Figure 15.9	Sequence Erosion and Recess Results	. 15-11

List of Tables

Chapter 1 Introduction

Table 1.1	Capabilities and Performance	1-2
Table 1.2	Hardware Features	1-3
Table 1.3	P-15 Options	1-4

Chapter 2 Basic Skills

Table 2.1	Keyboard Functions.	2-2
Table 2.2	Using the Left Trackball Button	2-4
Table 2.3	Profiler Program Access Icons	2-7
Table 2.4	Stylus Arm Assembly Protection	2-13
Table 2.5	Special Characters Allowed for Naming Purposes	2-19
Table 2.6	Graphics Export Dialog Features	2-22
Table 2.7	Graphics Export Dialog Features	2-24
Table 2.8	Graphics Export Dialog Features	2-25
Table 2.9	Graphics Export Dialog Features	2-28
Table 2.10	Print Dialog Box Features	2-31

Chapter 3 Scan Recipes

Table 3.1	Control Button Menu.	3-4
Table 3.2	GEM Status Display	3-5
Table 3.3	File Menu Options Description	3-6
Table 3.4	Edit Menu Options Description.	3-6
Table 3.5	Sample Menu Options Description	3-7
Table 3.6	Vacuum Menu Options Description	3-7
Table 3.7	Host Menu Options Description (Only available with GEM/SECS Option)	3-7
Table 3.8	Diagnostics Menu Options Description.	3-8
Table 3.9	Task Menu Options Description	3-8
Table 3.10	Tool Bar for the Scan Recipe Catalog Screen	3-8
Table 3.11	Catalog Screen Access Buttons	3-9
Table 3.12	Scan Recipe List Window Function Access Buttons	. 3-12
Table 3.13	Recommended Scan Speeds	. 3-18
Table 3.14	Show Position Options	. 3-23
Table 3.15	3D Scan Parameters Summary	. 3-25
Table 3.16	Automatic Parameter Adjustments	. 3-28
Table 3.17	Show Position Options	. 3-29
Table 3.18	Stylus Force Ranges for the Different Head Configurations	. 3-36
Table 3.19	Range and Resolution Scan Parameters for the MH2lf Head	. 3-38
Table 3.20	Range and Resolution Scan Parameters for the MH2sr Head	. 3-38
Table 3.21	Range and Resolution Scan Parameters for the MH2xr Head	. 3-39
Table 3.22	Profile Types	. 3-42
Table 3.23	Feature Detection Descriptions (See <i>Figure 3.47</i> and <i>Figure 3.48</i> .)	. 3-46
Table 3.24	2D General Parameters	. 3-67
Table 3.25	3D General Parameters	. 3-70
Table 3.26	2D Roughness Parameters	. 3-74
Table 3.27	2D Waviness Parameters	. 3-76

Table 3.28	3D Roughness Parameters	3-78
Table 3.29	Standard Diagnostic Ontions	2 109
Table 3.30	Linearity Calibration Only Diagnostic Ontions	2 108
1 able 5.51		. 5-108
Chapter 4	4 Stylus Change Procedure	
Table 4.1	Available L-Stylus Radius	4-1
Chapter 5	5 XY View Screen	
Table 5.1	View Menu Description	5-4
Table 5.2	Die Grid Menu	5-5
Table 5.3	Move Menu	5-6
Table 5.4	Direction Menu	5-7
Table 5.5	Actions Menu.	5-8
Table 5.6	Sample Menu	5-8
Table 5.7	Vacuum Menu	5-8
Table 5.8	Stylus Menu	5-9
Table 5.9	Blob Menu	5-9
Table 5.10	XY View window Tool Bar Buttons	5-10
Table 5.11	Locating a Scan Site.	5-17
Chapter (6 View Scan Window	
- T 11 (1		()
Table 6.1 $T = 11 + 6.2$	Scan Screen - Recipe Information Column	6-3
Table 6.2	View Scan Screen - 2D Location Information Column	6-3
Table 6.3	view Scan Screen - 2D Location Information Column	6-4
Table 0.4 T_{-1}	View Server - Recipe Information Column	0-4
Table 6.5	view Scan Screen - 2D Location Information Column	6-5
Table 6.6 $T_{11} < 7$	2D View Scan window 100l Bar Buttons	6-/
Table 6. / T_{a}	2D View Scan Screen - File Menu.	6-8
Table 0.8	2D View Scan Screen - Trace Menu	0-8
Table 0.9	2D View Scan Screen - Mode Menu	0-8
Table 0.10	2D View Scan Screen - Image Menu.	0-9
Table 0.11 T_{-1}	2D View Scan Screen - Scan Menu.	0-9
Table 0.12	2D View Scan Screen - Sequence Menu	0-9
Table 0.13 T_{-}	2D View Scan Screen - Pan Menu.	0-10
Table 0.14 T_{-}	2D view Scan Screen - Debug Menu	0-10
Table 0.15 $T_{\rm r}$	View Server - Recipe Information Column	0-13
Table 0.10 T_{-}	View Scan Screen - 3D Location Information Column	0-13
Table 0.1 / T_{-1}	View Scan Screen - 3D Location Information Column	0-14
Table 0.18 $T_{\rm r}$	View Server - Recipe Information Column	0-14
Table 0.19 T_{-1}	2D View Scan Screen - 2D Location Information Column	0-13
Table 6.20	2D View Scan Window 1001 Dar Duttons	0-10
Table 6.21	2D View Scall Scheen - File Menu	0-1/
Table 6.22	2D View Scan Screen Mode Menu	0-1/
Table 0.23	2D View Scan Screen - Mode Menu	0-1/
Table 6.24	2D View Scan Screen - Image Menu.	0-18
Table 6.25	2D View Scan Screen - Scan Menu.	0-18
Table 0.20	2D View Scan Screen - Sequence Menu	0-18
1 able 0.2/	SU view Scan Screen - Pan Menu.	0-19

Table 6.28	3D View Scan Screen - Debug Menu	. 6-19
------------	----------------------------------	--------

Chapter 7 Sequence Recipe and Data (Optional)

Table 7.1	Sequence Editor window buttons	7-4
Table 7.2	Sequence List Buttons	7-4
Table 7.3	Options Buttons	7-5
Table 7.4	Site Buttons	7-5
Table 7.5	Mode Drop-down Menu Options	7-8
Table 7.6	If Fail Drop-down Menu	7-9
Table 7.7	Save and Export Options	7-11
Table 7.8	Export Options	7-11
Table 7.9	Print Option	7-11
Table 7.10	Pattern Examples	7-39
Table 7.11	Pattern Search Criteria	7-40
Table 7.12	Groping Parameters	7-46

Chapter 8 Analyzing 2D Scan Data

Table 8.1	2D Analysis toolbar	8-5
Table 8.2	Trace Information Parameter.	8-23
Table 8.3	Feature Detection Descriptions (See Figure 8.34 and Figure 8.35.)	8-26
Table 8.4	Feature Detection Variables	8-33
Table 8.5	Scan Recipe Parameters.	8-45

Chapter 9 Analyzing 3D Scan Data

Table 9.2	Manual Image Rotation Buttons	. 9-4
Table 9.1	Automatic Image Rotation Buttons	. 9-4
Table 9.3	Image Rotation Using the Arrow Keys	. 9-5
Table 9.4	Rotate Image Menu Options (From View Menu)	. 9-6
Table 9.5	Analysis Toolbar Buttons	9-12
Table 9.6	Analysis Side Toolbar Buttons	9-14
Table 9.7	File Menu Operations	9-18
Table 9.8	Edit Menu Option	9-19
Table 9.9	View Menu Options.	9-20
Table 9.10	Change Menu Option From the View Menu	9-23
Table 9.11	Change Menu Option From the View Menu	9-24
Table 9.12	Operations Menu Options (From Menu Bar)	9-29
Table 9.13	Data Menu Options (From Menu Bar)	9-31
Table 9.14	Tools Menu Options (From Menu Bar)	9-32
Table 9.15	3D Analysis graphs	9-41

Chapter 10 System Security

Chapter 11 Configuration

Table 11.1	Facility Specifications	11-2
Table 11.2	Groping Parameters	11-30

Chapter 12 Calibrations

Table 12.1	Angle Feature Dimensions	12-27
Table 12.2	Standard Calibration Matrix	12-51

Chapter 13 GEM/SECS Option

Chapter 14 Wafer Stress Application Option

Table 14.1	Tool Bar Icons	14-11
Table 14.2	Elastic Constant of Substrates	14-19
Table 14.3	Polynomial Calculation Results Message Box	14-32
Table 14.4	Stress Calculation Results Box Contents	14-33

Chapter 15 CMP Analysis Algorithms

Table of Contents

Chapter 1 Introduction

INSTRUMENT OVERVIEW	1-1
CAPABILITIES AND PERFORMANCE	1-2
HARDWARE FEATURES AND OPTIONS	1-3

Chapter 2 Basic Skills

Overview	
USING THE KEYBOARD	
Introduction	
Using the Trackball	
Introduction.	
POWERING UP THE PROFILER	
Introduction	
Power Up Procedure	
SECURITY LOG ON	
Introduction	
Log On Procedure	
STARTING THE WINDOWS PROFILER APPLICATION	
Introduction	
Profiler Start-Up Procedure.	
NAVIGATING BETWEEN PROGRAM LEVEL SCREENS	
Introduction	
Navigation Procedure	
EXITING THE WINDOWS PROFILER APPLICATION	
Introduction	
Profiler Exit Procedure	
POWERING DOWN THE PROFILER	
Introduction	
Power Down Procedure	
Performing an Emergency Shutdown	
CLEARING A DIAGNOSTIC MESSAGE	
Introduction	
Clearing a Diagnostic Message Procedure	
PROTECTING THE STYLUS ARM ASSEMBLY.	
System Provisions for Stylus Protection	
Potential Stylus Damage During Scans.	
Adjusting the Video Image	
Introduction	
Video Image Adjustment Procedure	
USING FILE NAME CONVENTIONS	
Introduction	
Naming and Saving Files	
SAVING VIDEO IMAGES	

Introduction	2-20
Naming and Saving Video Images Procedure	2-20
EXPORTING DATA GRAPHS	2-21
Introduction	2-21
Exporting Data Graphs from the Analysis Screen	2-21
Exporting Graphs from the Scan Data Catalog	2-23
Exporting Graphs from the Sequence Data Catalog	2-26
EXPORTING DATA FROM THE DATABASE FILE MANAGER	2-28
PRINTING DATA	2-30
Introduction	2-30
Print Procedure	2-31

Chapter 3 Scan Recipes

INTRODUCTION	
ACCESSING THE SCAN RECIPE CATALOG SCREEN	
SCAN RECIPE CATALOG SCREEN COMPONENTS.	
Screen Tools	
Catalog Screen Access Buttons	
List Window	
System Status Message	3-13
CREATING AND EDITING A SCAN RECIPE	
Accessing the Scan Recipe Editor	3-13
Recipe Editor for 2D and 3D Scans	
Scan Parameter Definition Window	
Feature Detection (Only for 2D Scans)	
Filters and Cursors (Only for 2D Scans)	
Unit Output	
General Parameters	
Roughness and Waviness Parameters	
Bearing Ratio and Cutting Depth	
High Spot Count and Peak Count	
3D Cursors Parameters	
Setup Analysis Tools	
Diagnostic Options	
Saving Scan Recipes	
Entering Comments	

Chapter 4 Stylus Change Procedure

INTRODUCTION	. 4-1
PROXIMITY SENSOR ACTIVATION	. 4-2
STYLUS REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT	. 4-4
Stylus Removal	4-5
Stylus Replacement	. 4-9
Scan Position Offset Calibration	.4-11

Chapter 5 XY View Screen

INTRODUCTION	
STARTING THE XY VIEW APPLICATION.	
Procedure	
XY View Window Features	
SETTING THE MAGNIFICATION.	
Introduction	
Changing the Magnification	
Resetting the Zoom to "0.00"	
Saving the Current Zoom Position	
FOCUSING THE VIEW.	
Introduction	
Focus the Optics – Top- or Side-View	
POSITIONING THE SCAN SITE	
Introduction	
Using Die Grid Navigation	
Introduction	
Creating a Die Grid	
Loading a Die Grid (Turning ON Die Grid Navigation) for a Single Scan	
Clearing a Die Grid (Turn OFF Die Grid Navigation)	
Navigating Across the Wafer Using the Die Grid	
Enabling the Dropout Die Option	
Clearing Dropout Dies From the Grid	
Moving to Partial Dies	
Displaying Grid Numbers in the Die Grid Navigation Window	
To Change the Font and Color of the Grid Numbers	
USING BLOB ANALYSIS (CENTER OBJECT SEARCH)	
Introduction	
Starting Blob Analysis	
Changing the Level of Contrast	
Aligning the Sample	
Introduction	
Procedure	

Chapter 6 View Scan Window

INTRODUCTION	6-1
2D SCREEN FUNCTION.	6-1
2D Scan Information Field	
Scan Information Field - 2D Sequence Recipe Column	
Video Image	6-5
Real Time Scan Trace Window	6-6
2D View Scan Screen Tool Bar	6-6
2D View Scan Screen Menu Bar	6-7
3D SCREEN FUNCTION.	6-10
3D Scan Information Field	
Scan Information Field - 3D Sequence Recipe Column	
3D View Scan Screen Tool Bar	

3D View Scan Screen Menu Bar	6-17
Video Image	6-19
Real Time Scan Window	6-20
SHOW MEASUREMENT SITE DURING SEQUENCE RUN	6-21
Introduction	6-21
Configuration	6-21
Wafer Image Display	6-22
Scan Site Image Display	6-23
Aborting A Scan	6-23

Chapter 7 Sequence Recipe and Data (Optional)

IN	TRODUCTION	. 7-1
ST	FARTING THE SEQUENCE EDITOR APPLICATION	. 7-2
SI	EQUENCE EDITOR WINDOW FEATURES	. 7-3
	Sequence Editor Menus	. 7-3
	Sequence Editor Toolbar	. 7-4
	Displaying the Sequence Information Dialog Box	. 7-6
E	DITING THE OPTIONS FIELD IN THE SEQUENCE EDITOR	. 7-7
	Semi-Automatic	. 7-7
	Set Deskew Mode	. 7-8
	Teaching the Base Angle	7-12
C	REATING A SEQUENCE RECIPE	7-13
R	UNNING A SEQUENCE	7-29
С	ORRELATION SCANS	7-29
	Viewing the Correlation Scan Data	7-30
V	IEWING SAVED SEQUENCE DATA	7-31
	Viewing Old Sequence Data	7-31
	Recovering Sequence Data	7-32
	Calculating Combined Sequence Statistics (Option)	7-32
U	SING MULTI ANALYSIS IN SEQUENCE	7-32
	Viewing Multi Analysis Results	7-33
\mathbf{V}	IEWING SEQUENCE DATA	7-34
	Viewing Wafer Summary Data	7-34
	Sequence Summary Options	7-34
	Viewing Sequence Data with the Corresponding Trace, Site-by-Site	7-35
SI	EQUENCING WITH MANUAL DESKEW	7-36
D	ESKEWING TWICE TO ALIGN THETA	7-38
SI	EQUENCING WITH PATTERN RECOGNITION DESKEW	
(P	PATTERN RECOGNITION OPTION ONLY)	7-38
U	SING GROPING WITH PATTERN RECOGNITION	7-44
	Introduction	7-44
	Setup Procedure	7-44
	Groping Analysis (Condensed)	7-48
SI	EQUENCING WITH SITE-BY-SITE PATTERN RECOGNITION	7-48
SA	AVING SEQUENCES	7-49
SA	AVING THE SEQUENCE DATA	7-50
SI	EQUENCE TRANSPORTABILITY	7-51
	Introduction	7-51

Sequence Transport Configuration	
Wafer Center Calibration	
Stage to Wafer Conversion.	
HANDLER BUTTON OPTIONS WINDOW FOR SEQUENCING	

Chapter 8 Analyzing 2D Scan Data

INTRODUCTION	
STARTING THE 2D ANALYSIS APPLICATION	
Introduction	
Data Analysis Procedure	
2D Analysis Window Features	
LEVELING THE TRACE AND SETTING UP MEASUREMENTS	
Using Cursors	
Using the Leveling Cursors	
Using the Measurement Cursors	
CUSTOMIZING THE GRAPH DISPLAY	
Changing the Z Limits Display	
Changing the Z Units Display	
Displaying Data in FFT Mode	
Displaying Data on Logarithmic Scaling	
Viewing in Zoom Mode	
Viewing the Trace Information	
SETTING THE CURSOR POSITIONS USING FEATURE DETECTION	
Feature Detection	
SETTING THE CUTOFF FILTERS	
Setting the Short-Wave Filter Cutoff Values	
Setting the Long-Wavelength Filter Cutoff Values	
2D GLITCH REMOVAL	
Introduction	
Procedure	
MEASURING THE RADIUS ON CURVED SURFACES	
Measuring for Maximum Precision	
Measuring for the Lowest Horizontal Resolution	
Measuring with a 1-σ Repeatability (precision) of 0.002% of the Radius	
MEASURING STEP HEIGHT ON CURVED SURFACES USING FIT AND LEVEL	
SAVING SCAN DATA	
REEVALUATION OF SAVED 2D SCAN DATA	

Chapter 9 Analyzing 3D Scan Data

INTRODUCTION	
STARTING THE 3D ANALYSIS APPLICATION	
3D ANALYSIS SCREEN FEATURES	
Analysis Screen – Image Orientation	
Graphics Buttons and Their Function)	
Analysis Menu Bar	

LINE-BY-LINE LEVELING	9-33
Introduction	9-33
Activating Line Leveling	9-33
CUSTOMIZING THE SCAN IMAGE	
Setting the Image Proportions	
Setting the Shading Mode	
Changing the View Angle	9-41
CUSTOMIZING THE VIEW	
Changing the Image Colors	
Changing the Scan Height Colors	
Removing Banding with Line Leveling	
USING IMAGE ARITHMETIC TO COMPARE DATA	
SAVING SCAN DATA.	
Saving 3D Scan Data	9-45
Creating and Saving 2D Slice Data from a 3D Scan	

Chapter 10 System Security

10-1
10-2
10-2
10-4
10-4
10-6
10-6
10-9
10-9

Chapter 11 Configuration

INTRODUCTION	
OPERATING ENVIRONMENT	
FACILITY SPECIFICATIONS	
INTRODUCTION TO SYSTEM CONFIGURATION	
SETTING THE DATE AND TIME	
CONFIGURATION WINDOW	
STAGE CONFIGURATION	
Theta Soft Home Position	
Leveling Offset	
Teach Lowest Elevator Position	
Elevator Focus Speed	
Elevator Slow Focus Speed	
Move Elevator to Safe Position Before Moving Stage	
Elevator Safe Position	
Safety Interlock On	
System Configuration	

Editing the System Configuration	
Instrument Setup Configuration Dialog Box	
Summary Configuration	
Registry Maintenance	
Completing the Configuration	
SAFE AREA CONFIGURATION	
MACHINE HISTORY RECORDER CONFIGURATION	
ENABLE NEW OPTIONS (PROPRIETARY)	
EXPORT PATH DEFAULTS	
Data Export Paths Configuration	
PATTERN RECOGNITION OPTIONS AND DESKEW	
Introduction	
Deskew Twice To Align Theta	
Using Groping with Pattern Recognition	
SEQUENCE EXECUTION OPTIONS	
Open Sequence Execution Options Dialog Box	
Enable Sequence ID Prompts	
View Scan Display Settings	
Automation Settings	
TEACH MANUAL LOAD POSITION	
Teach Procedure	
PROXIMITY SENSOR CONFIGURATION	
Configuration Procedure	
Options	
Proximity Sensor to Hi Mag Camera Offsets.	
PASSWORD – MID-SESSION CALIBRATION OR CONFIGURATION ACCESS	
Introduction	
Accessing the Maintenance Functions	
Changing the Maintenance Password	
Loss of Power.	
TURNING OFF OR RESETTING THE INSTRUMENT	
INSTALLING A PRECISION LOCATOR	
Standard Precision Locators	
Three Point Disk Locator	
Precision Locators - Description	
OPTIONAL PRECISION LOCATORS	

Chapter 12 Calibrations

INTRODUCTION	
PASSWORD – MID-SESSION CALIBRATION OR CONFIGURATION ACCESS	
Introduction	
Accessing the Maintenance Functions	
Changing the Maintenance Password	
APPLIED FORCE CALIBRATION	
Windows - Applied Force Calibration Procedure	
Introduction	
Applied Force Calibration Procedure	
VIDEO CALIBRATION	

Introduction	12-5
Video Calibration Procedure	12-6
SCAN POSITION OFFSET CALIBRATION	12-10
Introduction	12-10
150 mm (Standard) Scan Position Offset Calibration	
Scan Position Offset Calibration Validation.	12-25
STEP HEIGHT CALIBRATION.	12-28
	12-29
Calibration Procedure:	12-29
LEVEL CALIBRATION.	12-41
Level Calibration Procedure	12-42
Level Calibration Confirmation	12-44
WAFER CENTER CALIBRATION.	12-47
Calibration Procedure	12-47
Stage to Wafer Conversion	12-50
STANDARD CALIBRATION MATRIX	12-51

Chapter 13 GEM/SECS Option

INTRODUCTION	13-1
ESTABLISHING GEM/SECS COMMUNICATION	13-1
Enabling GEM/SECS from the GEM User Interface Screen	13-4
USING THE GEM/SECS APPLICATION	13-4
GEM/SECS CONFIGURATION OPTIONS	13-5
Communication Configuration Options	13-6
Control States	13-9
Trace Configuration	13-14
GEM STATUS WINDOW	13-16
Current GEM Status Information	13-16
GEM TTY Messages: Sending and Receiving	13-17
Uploading Recipes to the Host	13-19
Downloading Recipes from the Host	13-22

Chapter 14 Wafer Stress Application Option

Chapter Contents	
DATA COLLECTION	
Scan Data Identification	
LOADING WAFERS	
Load Wafer - Manual Procedure	
THE STRESS APPLICATION WINDOW	
Stress Recipe Catalog	
Stress Scan Data File Catalog	
The Stress Screen Tool Bar	
SELECTING, CREATING, AND MODIFYING A STRESS RECIPE	
Select and Open a Stress Recipe	
Creating a New Stress Recipe	
Modifying a Stress Recipe	

SAVING A STRESS RECIPE	
Saving Recipe Parameters	
Saving Recipe Parameters as a New Recipe	
PRINTING A STRESS RECIPE	
CREATING STRESS DATA	
Taking a Single Pre-Stress Scan	
Taking a Single Post-Stress Scan	
ANALYZING STRESS SCAN RESULTS	
Viewing Stress Scan Results	
Stress Scan Analysis Procedure	
Analyzing the Results	

Chapter 15 CMP Analysis Algorithms

INTRODUCTION	
Arrays	
Lines	
Pads	
Setup for Analysis	
Analysis Application	

INTRODUCTION

INSTRUMENT OVERVIEW

The KLA-Tencor P-15 Profiler is a highly sensitive surface profiler that measures step height, roughness, and waviness on sample surfaces. Roughness can be measured with up to a 0.5 Å resolution over short distances. Waviness can be measured over the entire surface of a sample (assuming a sample size within the system's scan limits). The P-15 system uses stylus-based scanning to achieve high resolution and can correlate local submicron features with global surface measurements. It has a scan area of 200 X 200 mm.

The P15 system offers the option between three head configurations, each with a different vertical range: the MicroHead IIsr (standard range), MicroHead IIIf (low force), and the MicroHead xr (extended range).

- The **MicroHead IIsr** (standard range) has a vertical range of 327 µm and is capable of scanning at forces between 1 mg. and 50 mg.
- The MicroHead IIIf (low force) has a vertical range between 6.5 μm and 130 μm. It is capable of scanning with a stylus force between 0.05 and 50 mg. Low force is useful when scanning soft materials such as gold, indium, or photoresist.
- The **MicroHead IIxr** (extended range) extends the vertical range to 1000µm. It is capable of scanning at forces between 0.5 mg. and 50 mg.

The dual-view optics provide the user with an opportunity to view the sample from the top down and from the side. The top-down view is for accurate scan positioning. The side-view optics are used to view the stylus tip as it passes over sample attributes.

The P-15 is an automated surface scanner that can profile a wide range of topographies, including the following:

CMP

Recess measurement

Large-feature dishing

- Pattern-dependant erosion
- Surface topography characterization

Global planarity

Data Storage

Measurement of surface roughness

Slider - pole-tip recession and texture bump characterization

CAPABILITIES AND PERFORMANCE

The Profiler software application runs in the Microsoft Windows environment. It offers the following capabilities and performance features. (See *Table 1.1*).

 Table 1.1
 Capabilities and Performance

Feature	Description
Microscopic and Macroscopic Feature Resolution	Combines macroscopic and microscopic surface analysis, and measures features as small as 0.25 $\mu m.$
Correlation Scanning	Provides a data reference for comparing the measurements of multiple microscopic features by re-scanning portions of a macroscopic long scan on the microscopic scale.
Die Grid Navigation	Offers an alternative method to that of positioning the sample by XY coordinates. Instead, it selects die location for measuring lithographic patterns in different dies.
Poletip Recession Analysis	Delivers nanometer-level accuracy in determining the height difference between the poletip and the airbearing surface by using the extremely flat scans of the P-15 systems.
Expandable Data Points	Guarantees that the horizontal resolution is limited by the stylus radius and not by the number of data points, by using a number of data points per profile. The number of data points is expandable up to 1 million (maximum).
Advanced Data Acquisition and Manipulation	Measures step height accurately on curved surfaces by being able to fit and level a scan.
	Automates data analysis relative to the feature by detecting the edge or apex of a profile feature.
	Measures many roughness and waviness parameters, with user-selectable cutoff filters to isolate roughness and waviness.
	Calculates statistics for multiple data sets (optional).
Data Recalculation Using different or additional scan parameters	Software versions 6.2 and newer save raw data from the scan for reanalysis of the scan. This allows the user to enter the original scan recipe and reset some of the scan parameters and then reanalyze the scan data using those parameters. Results can be saved in the database.
Database Management	Stores, manages, imports, and exports measurement recipes and scan data using a full-featured database manager.
Network-capable	Allows fast data transfers to a host computer, and can be networked to desktop computers.
	In addition, the optional SECS II Interface provides bi-directional communication between the instrument and a host computer.
HARDWARE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

Table 1.2 presents the P-15 system's hardware features and options.

Table 1.2Hardware Features

Feature	Description
Dual-View Optics	All three head configurations offer dual-view optics. This provides Two distinct views of the scan surface. The first is a top-down view set of optics with two exchangeable lenses, 115-465x and 185-750x for fast, accurate positioning of the scan. The second is the side view optic set. The 90-410x optics provide the user a way to view the in-progress scan as the stylus moves over surface features.
Motorized Level and Rotation	Enables automatic mechanical leveling of the sample, and programmable sample rotation using a motorized rotary stage, enabling programmed θ -position repeatability of 4 μ m (0.16 mil) at 4 in. from the center.
Vacuum Sample Hold-down	Secures a sample in the center of the stage.
Computer	Includes a 20-GB hard drive, and 256-MB RAM, and 52x speed CD-ROM.
	Also includes an Ethernet network adapter card, and a 3.5-in. floppy disk drive with 1.44-MB capacity.
	Note: Computer specification subject to change.
Monitor	Includes a 38.1-cm (15-in.) SVGA video monitor or 15-in. flat panel monitor that provides a magnified sample video image.
	Note: Computer monitor specification subject to change.
Keyboard	Includes a keyboard with a full set of standard AT keys, as well as some instrument-specific control keys.
	The keyboard has a trackball for fast cursor movement, stage, and measurement head motion control, and convenient menu option selection. The trackball and keyboard can be used interchangeably for these functions.
Printer Port	A parallel printer port is available for local printing.
Network-capable	Allows fast data transfers to a host computer, and can be networked to desktop computers.
	bi-directional communication between the instrument and a host computer.

Table 1.3 P-15 Options

Feature	Description
Desktop Program	Allows offline analysis and maintenance of scan data. This frees the profiler for measurement and allows the user to conveniently conduct data analysis in an office environment. The Desktop Program can be loaded onto a desktop or laptop PC running Windows.
Sequence Scanning	Automatically executes up to 600 sequential scans per sample by grouping scans into one sequence recipe file.
Pattern Recognition Software	Provides the system with the capability to perform pattern recognition of surface features used to quickly locate scan features on samples with multiple identical scan sites.
Enhanced MaxView 3D™ Imaging	Creates a photo-like presentation of sample topography. Its advanced manipulation and measurement tools provide the ability to better delineate and characterize surface features.
MicroHead IIIf Measurement Head	Low Force head, described in the Instrument Overview.
MicroHead IIxr Measurement Head	Extended Range head, described in the Instrument Overview.
Answer! Custom Software Macros	Extends the data analysis capabilities of the system.
Color Camera	Replaces the standard black and white camera. Not available with pattern recognition option. Factory installed only.
Color Printer	HP 950Cxi Printer w/cable, or equivalent model.
Stress Measurement	Measures and computes the average, maximum and center stress of surface films in MPa.
GEM/SECS Interface	SECS II Interface provides bi-directional communication between the instrument and a host computer.

BASIC SKILLS

OVERVIEW

Before beginning use of the P-15 system, it is important to become familiar with basic skills — such as starting and shutting down the system, and operating the system buttons, keyboard, trackball, Microsoft Windows, Profiler application, and other components.

This chapter describes:

- Using the Keyboard on page 2-1
- Using the Trackball on page 2-3
- Powering Up the Profiler on page 2-4
- Security Log On on page 2-4
- Starting the Windows Profiler Application on page 2-5
- Navigating Between Program Level Screens on page 2-7
- Exiting the Windows Profiler Application on page 2-8
- *Powering Down the Profiler* on page 2-10
- Performing an Emergency Shutdown on page 2-12
- Clearing a Diagnostic Message on page 2-12
- Protecting the Stylus Arm Assembly on page 2-13
- Potential Stylus Damage During Scans on page 2-13
- Adjusting the Video Image on page 2-15
- Using File Name Conventions on page 2-19
- Saving Video Images on page 2-20
- Exporting Data Graphs on page 2-21
- Printing Data on page 2-30

USING THE KEYBOARD

Introduction

The keyboard is an input device for communicating with the Profiler. The system interface and scan processes are viewed on the monitor.

Except where noted, the keyboard, the trackball, or a combination of both can be used to perform commands or enter data. (See *Figure 2.1*).



Figure 2.1 Keyboard

The keyboard is used to operate the instrument in functions such as entering parameters to establish the Profiler scan procedure, starting a scan, and transferring data files (importing and exporting data files).

1. To perform special functions, press the appropriate key(s) or the corresponding hot key(s). (See *Table 2.1*)

		1
Key	Hot Key	Description
Esc	Esc	Closes the dialog box. Minimizes the menu, if a drop-down menu is displayed.
SHIFT-TAB		Puts text cursor in the previous field.
Тав		Puts text cursor in the next field.
PRINT SCRN	CTRL+P	Prints data from the current page.
DELETE		Deletes any characters in a data field.
ARROW KEYS [↑] [↓]		For menu items, they select the previous item (UP ARROW) or the next item (DOWN ARROW). Moves cursor up or down in text fields.

 Table 2.1
 Keyboard Functions

Кеу	Hot Key	Description
ARROW KEYS [←] [→]		Moves the measurement and leveling cursors left or right in the Analysis window.
		Selects the previous item (LEFT ARROW) or the next item (RIGHT ARROW) in a drop-down menu.
		Moves the cursor left or right in text fields.
Enter		Launches currently selected icon. Selects menu item from drop-down menu. Completes the entry of any dialog. Same as clicking OK .
Spacebar		In the Analysis window, pressing the SPACEBAR activates first the right, then the left, then both cursors together (so they can move in tandem). Press again to repeat the cycle.
LEFT TRACKBALL BUTTON		See Using the Trackball on page 2-3 in the following section.
RIGHT TRACKBALL BUTTON		See Using the Trackball on page 2-3 in the following section.

 Table 2.1
 Keyboard Functions (Continued)

USING THE TRACKBALL

Introduction

The trackball is a pointing device located on the right side of the keyboard. It consists of a motion-sensing mechanism (operating off the ball itself) and two buttons (left and right) situated around the trackball. (See *Figure 2.2*).



By using the trackball to move the cursor to contact points on the screen and then clicking or double-clicking on the contact, commands can be executed. Examples are: starting software tasks, selecting commands from menus, entering data into the computer.

- 1. Use a gentle rolling motion of the trackball to move the cursor across the monitor screen.
- 2. Use one of the following actions with the left trackball button, as detailed in *Table 2.2*, to accomplish the required function.

Action	Description
Click – To select an item or cancel a pending operation.	Press and release the left trackball button.
Double-click – To start an item.	Press and release the left trackball button twice in rapid succession.
Click and drag – To move an item from one location to another, or to select an item from a drop-down menu, or to select a section of text for editing, or to move scroll bars.	Press and hold the left trackball button while rolling the trackball. Release the trackball button when the desired function is complete.

Table 2.2 Using the Left Trackball Button

POWERING UP THE PROFILER

Introduction

When powered up, the system proceeds to start Windows and Profiler applications, and initializes the Profiler equipment.

Power Up Procedure

- 1. Press the **ON/OFF** button on the monitor to activate the monitor.
- 2. Press the **ON/OFF** button on the Computer.

The Computer starts, Windows is initiated, and the Program Manager is displayed.

SECURITY LOG ON

Introduction

The Windows system running the Profiler is designed to operate with a security log on procedure that limits access to various system function. This feature allows the system administrator to control access to system functions based on a log on password. Each user is assigned a log on word and a password that determines which functions are available to that user. In this way, the system is protected from users accidentally changing key parameters or accidentally erasing key data. the function is currently

and GEM/SECS are not available to the user.

A user with limited access encounters system icons that are grayed out. (See *Figure 2.3*). This indicates that the functions represented by the icon are not available to that user. In other screens and windows, certain function buttons are grayed out. This means that the affected function is not available at that point in the procedure or that the user does not have access to that feature. Examples of button procedures with user access restrictions are some calibrations, data export, data import, and data manipulation.





Log On Procedure

A dialog box appears after the system is fully booted up. Use the following procedure to log on:

- 1. Press CTRL-ALT-DEL on the keyboard to display the Log on dialog box.
- 2. The cursor should be blinking in the Log on ID field. Enter the Log On word. DO NOT CLICK OK.
- 3. TAB to the Password field.
- 4. The cursor should be blinking in the **Password** field. Enter the Password.
- 5. Press the Enter key or click OK.

STARTING THE WINDOWS PROFILER APPLICATION

Introduction

The Windows Profiler application is the interface with the P-15 system from which the scan functions are performed and viewed.

Step 1 When the boot cycle is complete and the log on is complete, double-click on the **Profiler** icon to initiate

system start-up.

Profiler Start-Up Procedure

1. Use the trackball to locate the Profiler icon with the screen cursor. Double-click on the **Profiler** icon to initiate startup of the P-15 system (See *Figure 2.4*).





- 2. The system goes through its initiation at the end of which the Profiler Catalog
- The system goes through its initiation at the end of which the Profiler Catalog screen appears. (See *Figure 2.5*)

Figure 2.5 Profiler Catalog Screen



This is the starting point for operating the instrument. In this screen, scan and sequence recipes can be accessed for system operation. This screen is also the entrance point for the other applications in the system. Each icon along the right side of the screen opens another application that contains the parameters or controls for a specific type of task. (See *Table 2.3.*)

Table 2.3Profiler Program Access Icons

lcon	Description	lcon	Description
	Configuration Displays the Profiler Configuration screen. This screen provides access various configuration windows.		Database File Manager Displays the screen that provides access to files for export/import and delete.
	Calibration Displays the Profiler Calibration screen. This screen provides access to system calibration windows used for accessing various calibration procedures.		Stress Displays the Profiler Stress catalog screen. This screen contains access to the recipe and data file screens.
-	Scan Displays the Profiler Catalog screen. This screen provides access to the Scan recipes, Sequence recipes, and data files.		GEM/SECS Displays the GEM/SECS screen. This screen is used to configure the system relationship with its host.

NAVIGATING BETWEEN PROGRAM LEVEL SCREENS

Introduction

The program level Profiler screens all have the program icons along the right border of the screen. These icons can be used to navigate between the various other program screens contained in the Profiler software.

Navigation Procedure

Use the following procedure to navigate between screens:

• Click on the icon of the required program screen. (See *Figure 2.6.*)

This *closes* the current program screen and accesses the chosen one. This could generate a message box that inquires if changes to settings, or data are to be saved or discarded. Choose the required answer and follow any instruction.

• Functions performed in some screens automatically access other screens. **EXAMPLE:**

Performing a scan in the XY View screen generates the scan screen then the Analysis screen.

The above screens do not contain the program icons. To change or exit, click **File** in the Menu Bar and choose **Exit** from the drop-down menu. In some cases it is necessary to click the control button at the top left corner of the screen and choose **Close** from its drop-down menu. This closes the current screen and displays the program screen from which the procedure was entered.



Figure 2.6 Profiler Configuration Screen

EXITING THE WINDOWS PROFILER APPLICATION

Introduction

This procedure is used to close the Profiler and Windows applications.

Profiler Exit Procedure

- 1. Close all screens up to a program screen (program level screens are represented by one of the program icons at the right side of the screen). (See Figure 2.7.)
- 2. Click on the control button at the top left of the screen to display the menu. (See Figure 2.7.)
- 3. Choose **Close** from the drop-down menu. (See *Figure 2.7.*)



Figure 2.7 Closing the Profiler Application Using the Control Button

4. A Profiler Container (message box) appears asking, "Are you sure you want to exit the Profiler?" Click on Yes to exit. (See Figure 2.8.)



8. Click Yes to log off and set up for another user to log on. (See *Figure 2.10*.)

POWERING DOWN THE PROFILER

Introduction

This procedure is used to power down the P-15 system.

This procedure is used any time the P-15 system must be completely shut down. (For example: for maintenance, repair, relocation of the instrument, or when system use is suspended for an extended period of time.)

Power Down Procedure

- 1. Close all screens up to a program screen (program level screens are represented by one of the program icons at the right side of the screen). (See *Figure 2.11*.)
- 2. Click on the control button at the top left of the screen to display it menu. (See *Figure 2.11*.)
- 3. Choose Close from the drop-down menu. (See Figure 2.11.)

Figure 2.11 Closing the Profiler Application Using the Control Button Poliler - (Ca × Step 2 To display its menu, General Scan Calibrati on East click its Control Button. Close Alt+F4 1.5 Y (um/pixel) Step 3 Click on Close from the drop-down menu. Badius Curvature Lamp Balan 13.

4. A Profiler Container (message box) appears asking, "Are you sure you want to exit the Profiler?" Click on **Yes** to exit. (See *Figure 2.12*.)





Leve

- To Log Off and Shut Down 5 the System
- 5. If exiting from the program so that another user can log on, click on the **Start** button at the bottom left of the screen to display its menu. (See *Figure 2.13*.)

Figure 2.13 Start Menu



6. Choose **Shut Down** from the menu. (See *Figure 2.13*.) This displays a dialog box that presents three options. (See *Figure 2.14*.)





- 7. Choose, "Shut down the computer?" (See Figure 2.14.)
- 8. After the computer has closed all applications and written information to the system drive, it displays a message box that says, "It is now safe to shut down your computer."

This message box has a button at the bottom of it that says "Reboot?"

9. If rebooting the system (without powering down the system) click on Reboot?



CAUTION: When the instrument is powered up or reset, the stage moves the Z axis all the way up, then X and Y to the 0,0 position.

- 10. If powering down the Profiler:
 - a. Press the On/OFF button on the Profiler computer.
 - b. Press the **ON/OFF** button on the monitor to turn off the monitor.

PERFORMING AN EMERGENCY SHUTDOWN

The P-15 Profiler is powered up and shut down from the computer On/Off switch. In case of an emergency, turn off the computer and this shuts down the entire system.

CLEARING A DIAGNOSTIC MESSAGE

Introduction

Diagnostic messages appear in the status bar at the bottom of the window when an action or circumstances create the potential for instrument malfunction, such as occurs with a motion error. The system status bar also presents messages that guide the user through many of the system procedures. When a diagnostic message appears, the status bar at the bottom of the screen becomes red and the status bar must be cleared before it can display any new messages.

Clearing a Diagnostic Message Procedure

After reading the message in the status bar at the bottom left of the screen, click the **Clear Status** button on bottom right of the status bar to proceed. See *Figure 2.12*.

Figure 2.15 Clearing the Status Diagnostic Messages



PROTECTING THE STYLUS ARM ASSEMBLY

System Provisions for Stylus Protection

The P-15 profiler incorporate several design features that protect the stylus from damage. (See *Table 2.4.*)

Protection Name	Stylus Arm Protective Measure	Description of Result
Data Point Saturation	During an ascending scan, the scan is terminated when the stylus reaches its upper limit of travel (when it has pivoted up as high as it can go)	The stylus automatically retracts and the scan is terminated. In the Scan window, the trace ascends and flat lines at the top of its range.
Lowest Elevator Position	As a safety factor, the elevator can be programmed to lower only to a preset limit.	With the Lowest Elevator Position properly set, when the measurement head is lowered, it only goes as far as the setting allows, thus protecting the stylus and sample from damage.
		This setting is also used to trigger the head descent slow down point which occurs 1000 µm (set in the system registry) above the Lowest Elevator Position.
Proximity Sensor	The Proximity Sensor is designed to detect the sample as the head lowers and slow the descent.	With the Proximity Sensor ON , the head slows and stops as it nears the sample surface. If the Proximity Sensor is turned OFF , then the head descent slows when it reaches 1000 μ m above the Lowest Elevator Position. The system then depends on the stylus contact with the sample surface to stop the head descent. If the stylus is coming down in a hole or off the edge of the sample, the system or the sample could be damaged by contact with the sensor assembly.

 Table 2.4
 Stylus Arm Assembly Protection

Potential Stylus Damage During Scans

Despite precautionary features, there are still circumstances where damage can occur.

- Damage occurs whenever the stylus is down and a vertical wall that is fixed to the stage moves against the stylus shaft.
- The stylus can be damaged whenever it encounters an obstacle higher than the bevel height of the stylus tip (higher than 440 µm (17 mils) for the MicroHead L-style stylus. (See *Figure 2.16*.)

• The stylus can be damaged by a shorter object if it has sharp corners or burrs that bite into the stylus tip.



• If the stylus is lowered or a scan is started when the sample is not directly under the stylus, damage to the stylus could occur.

This is most likely to happen when lowering the measurement head such that the stylus drops into the center hole of a hard disk or misses the edge of the sample. Then when the stage is moved, the stylus is damaged.



CAUTION: Do not move the stage unless the stylus is well above the sample surface.



CAUTION: Do not start a scan unless the stylus is directly over the sample or damage to the stylus or head could occur.

- If a sample or precision locator is changed without resetting the **Lowest Elevator Position**, the head can lower onto the locator if the stylus misses the locator surface.
- Damage could occur when **MAN LOAD** is clicked, causing the sample or locator to hit the stylus. The measurement head must be at least 6.4 mm (0.25 in.) above the top of the precision locator.



NOTE: The stylus tip is located about 4 mm (165 mils) below the measurement head.



CAUTION: If changing the sample or precision locator to a different height, reset the **Lowest Elevator Position.** Otherwise, damage to the stylus or the measurement head can occur.

When designing custom jigs or fixtures, consider the precautions noted in this section. For instance, when designing a custom hard disk locator, its center section must be flush with the top of the disk surface. Care must be exercised when nulling where there is a hole in a jig, a vacuum hole, or a groove in a surface.

For hard disks only, when measuring the disk, avoid nulling in the Disk Locator hole.



NOTE: The KLA-Tencor Warranty Policy does not cover damage to the stylus arm assembly or the pivot caused by operator error or carelessness.

Adjusting the Video Image

Introduction

The Video Controls allow the view of a particular sample surface to be optimized. The brightness and contrast can be varied for the camera.



NOTE: Changing the focus can invalidate sequences that use pattern recognition because the sample image is less likely to match the stored image in the pattern recognition files.

The purpose of adjusting the video image is to clarify the image resolution and contrast so it can be clearly viewed.

Video Image Adjustment Procedure

- 1. Open the **Scan Recipe** window. (Click on the **Scan Recipe** button in the Catalog screen. See *Figure 2.17*.)
- 2. Once the Scan Recipe window is active, with a recipe highlighted, click the **XY View** button to display the XY View screen. (See *Figure 2.17*.)

highlighted, click on the XY icon to display the XY View screen.	Step 2 With a Scan Recipe	Profiler - (Catal	og) Varues Nett Discostic Tarks 17/10						*Online/Lo	ocal X
to display the XY View screen.	highlighted, click on the XY icon	Tes For Joint	@ STARC @ 0 - 12 @ 2	D 3D						1
Step 1 When the screen opens, click on the Scan Recipe button to display the Scan Recipe list in the Information Display window.	to display the XY View screen.			Scan Recipe Name:						
Step 1 When the screen opens, click on the Scan Recipe button to display the Scan Recipe list in the Information Display window.	. ,	Recipe	Parine Path	Recipe Name	Length	Sampling	Speed	Creation Date	Time	
Step 1 When the screen opens, click on the Scan Recipe button to display the Scan Recipe list in the Information Display window.			IGa SCANRCP	20088	(µm)	Rate (Hz)	(µm/s)	(yyyy-mm-dd) 2001=03=23	15:46	199
Step 1 When the screen opens, sequence click on the Scan Recipe button sequence to display the Scan Recipe list in sequence the Information Display window. sequence		Scan Data	Class 2 Scans	500HH	500	200	100	2001-03-23	15:47	6.0
click on the Scan Recipe button to display the Scan Recipe list in the Information Display window.	Step 1 When the screen opens,									
to display the Scan Recipe list in the Information Display window.	click on the Scan Recipe button	Sequence								<u>í</u>
the Information Display window.	to display the Scan Recipe list in	necipe								
	the Information Display window	Sequence								
	ale memacer Display milden.									
	List window									
									×	
				0.1		1	<u></u>	war 1	_	
Mark New Veew Moday S1/041 X1 Veew				Primt	New		sonth 2			
Clear Status					_	_	_		Cle	ar Status

Figure 2.17 Scan Recipe Window in the Catalog Screen





3. Click on MAN LOAD (see Figure 2.18) in the Tool Bar to move the stage to the door. (See Figure 2.18.)

The head rises to a taught height and the stage moves to the door (or the taught manual load position).

4. Open the door.



CAUTION: Do not open the door until the stage has completely stopped moving. All motors stop immediately when the door is opened. (Unless the interlock is disabled.)

- 5. Place the sample on the stage in the proper orientation.
- 6. Turn on the vacuum switch located on the left inside edge of the door. The sample should now be securely in place on the stage.
- 7. Close the door.
- 8. Click on **MAN LOAD** to move the stage back under the system head.
- 9. Click the **FOCUS** button to null the stylus on the sample surface and focus at the chosen magnification. (See Figure 2.18.)
- 10. Click View in the Menu Bar to display its menu. (See Figure 2.19.)
- 11. Select Video Controls. (See Figure 2.19.)

Figure 2.19 XY View Screen - View Menu



Menu bar.

box.

The Video Controls dialog box appears. (See Figure 2.20.)

Figure 2.20 Video Control Dialog Box

Step 12 Use the slide	Video Contr	rols			Step 13 When desired
bar or directly enter	Contrast:				results are achieved,
the value required.	Lamp Brightness:				click of Apply.
					Step 14 Click on Exit

- 12. Adjust contrast and brightness controls:
 - a. Click and drag the slide bars for contrast and lamp brightness to achieve desired effect.
 - b. If desired, type in the required values instead of dragging the slide bars.
 - c. Repeat if needed until desired results are obtained.
- 13. When values for **Contrast** and **Lamp Brightness** are set, click **Apply**.
- 14. When the adjustments are complete, click **Exit**

The settings are stored.

USING FILE NAME CONVENTIONS

Introduction

Scan and sequence recipes and data can be saved, as well as graphs and video images. In the Windows naming convention only the following special characters are allowed:

Table 2.5 Special Characters Allowed for Naming Purposes

• _ underscore	 hyphen 	• { left brace
• ! exclamation point	• & ampersand	} right brace
• % percent sign	• (left parenthesis	• • single quotation mark
• # number sign	•) right parenthesis	• 'apostrophe
• \$ dollar sign	•	•

Naming and Saving Files

When saving a file, click File to display its menu. Click the Save... button. A dialog box appears. The content and appearance differ slightly depending on what is being saved and the screen from which Save... was chosen. The one in *Figure 2.21* is for saving sequence data.





- 2. Choose the appropriate folder in which to store the item being saved. (See *Figure 2.21*.)
- **3**. Create a distinct file name for the item being saved. It is best to make the name representative of the content of the file if possible. The name can be up to 72 characters in length and should not contain empty spaces. Enter the file name in the file name field. (See *Figure 2.21*.)
- 4. Set any other necessary options required to properly store the information in the file. In *Figure 2.21* that would include setting the content format of the file to either **Statistics** or **Trace**, options only for sequence data. (See *Figure 2.21*.)
- 5. Click **Save** to save the data in the named file. (See *Figure 2.21*.)

SAVING VIDEO IMAGES

Introduction

A video image can be captured in the XY View window and saved to a file. Many standard image output file formats are supported.

Naming and Saving Video Images Procedure

 Go to either the XY View or Theta View window, and click the View menu, then select Save Image to File to display the Save Image As dialog box. (See *Figure 2.22*).



- 	Save Image As Save jn: Capture	Step 2 New folder. After choosing a directory for the file, click on this icon and enter a name for the new folder.
e u	File name: 3dagain Save as type: Windows BMP 8 Cancel	

- Choose the location in which the image is to be saved. To view the possible files, click on the menu-arrow next to Save in and click on the desired folder. To create another folder within a directory, click on the *new folder icon* and enter a name for the new folder.
- 3. Next to File name, enter a name for the image file that is to be created.
- 4. Set the format that the image is to be saved in:
 - a. Click on the menu-arrow next to Save as type:
 - b. Scroll until the desired format is visible.
 - c. Click on the desired format.
- 5. Click **Save** to save the video image.
- 6. To view the video image, import the file into an application.

0104396-000 AA

Step 2 Choose a file to save the image in. Click on the menuarrow, scroll until the directory or folder is found and click on it.

Step 3 Name the file that the image is to be saved as.

Step 4 Choose a format to store the image as. Click on the menu arrow, scroll until the format appears, click on the format.

EXPORTING DATA GRAPHS

Introduction

Data graphs are contained in the Scan Data catalog, Sequence Data catalog and in the Analysis screen when the scan data is being analyzed. 2D and 3D graphs can be exported directly from the Analysis screen during scan data analysis. 2D and 3D graphs from the Scan Data catalog can be exported in two ways: from the Analysis screen, and from the Database File Manager.

2D and 3D data graphs from the Sequence Data catalog can be exported only from the analysis screen because the file must be opened and the desired graph chosen and displayed before it can be exported.

The data graph is exported as a graphic image in one of the following file formats:

Bitmap format (*.bmp)	Encapsulated Post Script (*.eps)
TIFF format (*.tif)	JPEG format (*.jpg)
Word Metafile format (*.wmf)	GIF format (*.gif) (not supported)

Figure 2.23 Export File Formats in Drop-Down Menu

File <u>n</u> ame:	1-24-01-otc-1-3d	<u>O</u> pen
Save as <u>t</u> ype:	BMP files (*.bmp)	Cancel
	EPS files (*.eps) TIF files (*.tif)	<u>H</u> elp
	WMF files (*.wmf) JPEG files (*.jpg)	
	GIF files (*.gif)	

Exporting Data Graphs from the Analysis Screen

1. With the graph to be exported displayed in the Analysis screen, click **File** to display its menu. (See *Figure 2.24*.)

Figure 2.24	Analysis Screen –	File Menu
-------------	-------------------	-----------



Opening the Export Graph

Dialog Box from the

Analysis Screen.

2. Select Export Graph... (See Figure 2.24.)

This displays the dialog box for graphic exports. (See Figure 2.25.)

Figure 2.25 Export Graph Dialog Box

This field contains any file tree that is directly under the folder in the Save In field above it.	Save As Save in: Scanexp	If a graph is saved, it is placed in the folder that is displayed in the Save In field.
Step 3 Enter the file name in the File name field.	File name: scan_4 Save as type: BMP files (".bmp) Image: Help	Step 4 When the file has been named, click on Save to save the newly named file in the folder displayed in the Save In field.

3. Set the required variables in the **Save As** dialog box. See *Table 2.6* for an explanation of the variables to be set.

es

Variable	Description
Save In:	This drop-down menu provides a <i>browse</i> feature from which to search for the folder that the graphic is to be exported to or the application that is to analyze it. The location must be and displayed in the Save In: field.
Save In: file tree field	Select the Directory path.
File Name	Type the File Name, up to 68 -characters in length.
Save as Type	From the drop-down menu, select the graphic format: (BMP, TIFF, WMF, EPS, or JPEG).
Export Size (not visible from the Analysis screen)	The size options for the graph to be exported is not available in the Analysis screen because the operator can adjust the size of the image on the screen to the desired export size.

4. After all the information is entered, click **Save** to export the graph.

Exporting Graph from the

Database File Manager

Exporting Graphs from the Scan Data Catalog

Exporting the Graph without Checking it in Analysis

1. Go to any top level screen containing the system icons and click on the **Database** File Manager icon. (See *Figure 2.26*)

Figure 2.26 Catalog Screen – Database File Manager Icon



2. In the Database Catalog screen, choose either the **2D** or **3D** button in the tool bar. Depending on the Catalog group chosen, this displays the 2D or 3D data or recipe sets. (See *Figure 2.27*.)



Profiler - (Cata	alog]	75				*Online/Loc	x X
le Edit PPTran	nafer Diagnostic Tasks Help						
Export	<u>X</u> ↔ ↔ 2D 3D)					2
Birt.		Scan Data Name:					
6.2		1-24-01-0TC-1-30					
6.0 ⁿ	Scan Data Path:	Scan Data	Recipe ID	Length (µm)	Y Size (µm)	Creation Date (yyyy-mm-dd)	
Scan Data	SCAN DATA	1-24-01	200-3D	200	90	2001-03-24	60
Sequence							<u>s</u>
Hecipe							
Sequence Data							
	Drive:						
	Dej	te Thumphals	Review	Egport	jmport	Graph Export	

Step 2 Click on 3D to display 3D data or recipes.

- 3. Choose **Scan Data** from the Catalog buttons at the left of the screen.
- 4. Navigate to the folder containing the required graph.
- 5. If the file name is known and there is no need to see the graph, click on the file name of the graph, and click on **Export Graph...** at the bottom of the screen.

To Open the Export Dialog Box from the Database Screen This opens the export dialog box titled **Save As**. (See *Figure 2.28*).

Figure 2.28 Graphics Export Dialog Box

Save As		2ip ? 🗙
Savejn:	🔄 3d-otc 💽 💽	
9 3-24-01-		
File <u>n</u> ame:	1-24-01-otc-1-3d	<u>S</u> ave
Save as <u>type</u> :	BMP files (*.bmp)	Cancel
Export Size		Help
Original Formation	ormati 801 x 360 pixels	
C Resample	801 x 360 pixels	
🗖 Mainta	in Aspect Ratio	

6. Complete the information in the dialog box. See *Table 2.7* for more information.

 Table 2.7
 Graphics Export Dialog Features

Feature	Description				
Save In:	This drop-down menu provides a <i>browse</i> feature from which to search for the folder that the graphic is to be exported to, the application that is to analyze it, or the printer it is to be printed by. The location must be and displayed in the Save In: field.				
Save In: file tree field	Select the Directory path.				
File Name	Type the File Name, up to 68-characters in length.				
Save as Type	Select the graphic format: (BMP , TIFF , WMF , EPS , or JPEG).				
Export Size	Two options: Original Format and Resample Original Format – To export in the original format and				
	size, click Original Format.				
	<i>Resample</i> – To export in another size format, click Resample and use one of the following:				
	• Enter the scale sizes in pixels to change the sample size. (Note that if the numbers do not maintain the aspect ratio of the original sample, the graph is distorted.) OR				
	• To keep the same scale, enter the first size setting then click the Maintain Aspect Ratio checkbox. The system fills in the second number to keep the aspect ratio correct.				

7. After all the information has been entered, click **Save** to complete the export.

To Open the Export Dialog Box from the Analysis Screen	1. 2.	When the operator needs to see the scan graph before exporting it, after entering the Scan Data folder containing the scan file, double-click on the file. This opens the Analysis screen with the graph displayed. If the correct graph is displayed, resize or reorient it as required before export.
		Figure 2.29 Scan Data Graph in the Analysis Screen

Exporting the Graph After Checking it in Analysis

- Elo Edi # # # K & 0 6 A A 0 0 0 0 0 0 8 ALC Step 3 Choose Export Print... Print Preyiew Pjint Setup... Graph... from the File drop-down menu. Load Work: Save Work Exit Sq Sa Ssk Sku Sdeltaq Sz 4.77712 2.72997 Wiation Mean Deviation UN A A Kurtosis RMS slope Ten Point Height 15.90 10.0484 µm 0 Sbi 0.21563 ring Rati (Height 10.0 Å Re. 🖬 3D Data: sc Step 2 The size and orientation in the display determines what the exported graph looks like. Clear Status Cassette IC Clear Status
 - 3. Choose Export Graph... from the File menu (see Figure 2.29) to open the Save As (export) dialog box.
 - 4. Fill in the required information. (See field explanations in *Table 2.8.*)

Table 2.8 Graphics Export Dialog Features

Variable	Description			
Save In:	This drop-down menu provides a <i>browse</i> feature from which to search for the folder that the graphic is to be exported to or the application that is to analyze it. The location must be and displayed in the Save In: field.			
Save In: file tree field	Select the Directory path.			
File Name	Type the File Name, up to 72-characters in length.			
Save as Type	From the drop-down menu, select the graphic format: (BMP , TIFF , WMF , EPS , or JPEG).			
Export Size (not visible from the Analysis screen)	The size options offered in the Database screen for resizing the graph to be exported is not available in the Analysis screen. In Analysis the operator can adjust the size and orientation of the image on the screen before it is exported.			

5. After all the information has been entered, click **Save** to complete the export.

Exporting Graphs from the Sequence Data Catalog

The sequence file graphs cannot be directly viewed through the Sequence Data screen. The operator must open the data file in the Analysis screen and choose a specific scan graph to be exported.

- 1. From the Database screen, click the Sequence Data button to open the Sequence Data window in the Database screen.
- 2. Navigate to the folder containing the sequence data set that has the graph(s) to be exported.
- **3**. To export a graph from a Sequence Data set, double-click on that sequence data set (see *Figure 2.30*) to open the Analysis screen with it displayed.

The Analysis screen opens with the first scan from the first slot displayed in the Analysis window. To find the required scan graph it might be necessary to open the Surface Parameters Data (statistics) window.

Figure 2.30 Choosing a Sequence Data Set

Creation Date Time (5999-mm dd)	Creation Date			Teorem nues	
Creation Date Time (yyyy-mm-dd)	Creation Date			INTERN INVER	
	(yyyy-mm-dd)	Number of Slots	Sequence ID	Sequence Data Sets	Sequence Path:
1999-07-26 10:34:54 1999-07-26 10:34:54 1990-05-10:42 2000-10-26 06:54:12 2000-10-26 06:54:10 2000-10-27 08:06:54:10 2000-10-27 08:06:54:10 200	1999-07-26 2001-07-26 2000-10-26 2000-10-26 2000-10-26 2000-10-25 2000-10-25 2000-10-25 2000-10-25 2001-01-25 2001-01-03		1HD:-0/1 000384200 00055_500 00055_500 00055_500 00055_500 00055_500 00055_500 00055_500 00055_500	INFC-07L BIOLATIN SEQ.3 SEQ.3 SEQ.3 SEQUENCE SUFFCAN1 TEST	Security Sequence ☐ HopPinnsSequence ☐ min_scon Dive:

4. If the Surface Parameter Data window is not open in the Analysis screen, click **STATS** to open it. (See *Figure 2.31*.) The Surface Parameters Data window can also be accessed by choosing **Surface Summary**... from the **View** menu.

Figure 2.31 Opening the Statistics Window to View Scan List

Step 4 Click on STATS to open the Scan Parameters (Statistics) Window for viewing the list of scans in the sequence.



5. In the Surface Parameters Summary window, choose the required Slot and Site to display the scan that is to be exported. (See *Figure 2.32*.) The graph is displayed in the Analysis window.





6. Resize or reorient the graph if necessary before being exported.

Step 5 Choose the Site to display the scan that is to be exported.

7. Choose **Export Graph...** from the **File** menu. This displays the **Save As** (export) dialog box. (See *Figure 2.33*.)

Figure 2.33 Save As (Export) Dialog Box

		? ×
🔄 scanexp	• È ĉ	* **
scan_4		<u>S</u> ave
BMP files (*.bmp)	T	Cancel
		<u>H</u> elp
	scanexp scan_4 BMP files (*.bmp)	scanexp

8. Set the options for the Graphics Export features. See *Table 2.9* for an explanation of the variables to be set.

Variable	Description
Save In:	This drop-down menu provides a <i>browse</i> feature from which to search for the folder that the graphic is to be exported to or the application that is to analyze it. The location must be and displayed in the Save In: field.
Save In: file tree field	Select the Directory path.
File Name	Type the File Name, up to 68-characters in length.
Save as Type	From the drop-down menu, select the graphic format: (BMP, TIFF, WMF, EPS, or JPEG).
Export Size (not visible from the Analysis screen)	The size options offered in the Database screen for resizing the graph to be exported is not available in the Analysis screen. In Analysis the operator can adjust the size and orientation of the image on the screen before it is exported.

 Table 2.9
 Graphics Export Dialog Features

9. Click **Save** to export the graph.

EXPORTING DATA FROM THE DATABASE FILE MANAGER

Export of data files from the Database File Manager is performed the same way for both Scan Data and Sequence Data sets.

1. From the Database File Manager choose either 2D or 3D files.

2. Choose either the Scan Data or Sequence Data catalog button. This displays the related 2D or 3D data files in the chosen catalog.

Figure 2.34 Data Catalog Screen for Export of Data or Recipes



Step 1 Click on 2D or 3D to display related files.

3. Navigate to the required data set and click on it to highlight it.

There are three ways to access the **Export Sequence** (or **Scan**) **Data – Select Export Directory** dialog box.

- The **Export**... button at the bottom of the screen
- The Export Data icon in the tool bar at the top of the screen
- The **Export**... menu item in the **File** menu
- 4. Select **Export**... from one of its access points.

This displays the **Export Sequence** (or **Scan**) **Data -- Select Export Directory** dialog box. (See *Figure 2.35*.)

Figure 2.35 Export Data Dialog Box

Step 5 From the drop-down file	Export Sequence Data Select Export Directory	<
and file in which the data is to be stored.		
Step 6 Choose an export format.		
The destination path and directory is displayed here.	Format OK • ASCII • Binary • Comp6urf OK Export directory:	

- 5. From the **Export to:** drop-down menu, choose the directory/folder that the data is to be exported to. The actual path and folder name are displayed at the bottom left of the dialog box. (See *Figure 2.35*.)
- 6. Choose an export format, either ASCI or Binary. (See Figure 2.35.)
- 7. Click **OK** to export the data to the destination folder.

PRINTING DATA

Introduction

When the scan is completed, the raw data is processed and displayed in the Analysis screen. (See *Figure 2.36*.) The Trace Information area, to the left of the trace, lists a summary of the trace data. Choosing **Surface Summary** from the **File** menu opens another window displaying calculated scan parameters, that can be pre-selected in the scan recipe.

Figure 2.36 Analysis Screen



On the left side of the trace image is the Trace Information area.

- The Height text field displays the vertical distance between the trace intersections of the left and right measurement cursors.
- The Width text field displays the horizontal distance between the midpoints of the areas defined by the two cursors.
- Each cursor position and the stage position is displayed.

Print Procedure

1. Go to the **Analysis** window, and click the **Print** icon to display the Print dialog box. (See *Figure 2.37*.)

Figure 2.37 Print Dialog Box



2. Set the options for the **PRINT** features. (See *Table 2.10*).

Table 2.10	Print Dialog	Box Features
------------	--------------	--------------

Feature	Description
Print Range	Select the Print Range of pages (All, Selection, Pages From _ To _).
Properties	Select the Print Quality of text (Low , Medium , High).
Copies	Type the Copies number — to sort multiple copies, check the Collate Copies checkbox.

3. Click **OK** to print the data.

SCAN RECIPES

INTRODUCTION

The P-15 system performs scans of sample surfaces using recipes that set the parameters of each scan. Each recipe can be used alone or, if the system is capable of sequencing, in conjunction with other recipes in a sequence to gather necessary data from a given sample. Even some system calibrations use recipes to perform vital data gathering and analysis so the system can be calibrated for optimum performance.

The P-15 system is capable of high resolution scans in two or three dimensional formats. Both formats use trace data. The three dimensional scan uses a combination of parallel traces. The length of the traces, the distance between parallel traces, and the frequency of data point collection are all defined in the recipe. The two dimensional trace is a collection of data points made at a recipe specified frequency either as one trace, or a recipe specified number of traces over the same scan position, which are then averaged. The data is then presented in either a two or three dimensional graphical format for observation and analysis. Data storage and analysis are detailed in *Saving Scan Data* on page 8-47 and *Saving Scan Data* on page 9-45.

This chapter describes:

- Accessing the Scan Recipe Catalog Screen on page 3-2
- Scan Recipe Catalog Screen Components on page 3-3
- *List Window* on page 3-10
- Creating and Editing a Scan Recipe on page 3-13
- System Status Message on page 3-13
- Recipe Editor for 2D and 3D Scans on page 3-15
- Scan Parameter Definition Window on page 3-16
- Feature Detection (Only for 2D Scans) on page 3-43
- Filters and Cursors (Only for 2D Scans) on page 3-50
- General Parameters on page 3-65
- Roughness and Waviness Parameters on page 3-70
- Bearing Ratio and Cutting Depth on page 3-79
- High Spot Count and Peak Count on page 3-84
- 3D Cursors Parameters on page 3-88
- Setup Analysis Tools on page 3-95
- Diagnostic Options on page 3-105
- Saving Scan Recipes on page 3-109
- Entering Comments on page 3-113

ACCESSING THE SCAN RECIPE CATALOG SCREEN

The Catalog screen is the first screen to appear when the profiler application is opened. The functional areas in the screen are described in *Figure 3.1* and *Figure 3.2*.





These Command buttons present recipe interaction functions in a button format.


Figure 3.2 Catalog Sequence Recipe Screen

If the Scan Recipe button is not chosen, click on it. After the **Scan Recipe** button is clicked, the List window changes to the Scan Recipe list. The Scan Recipe screen is divided into functional **components**. Each is discussed in the following section, *Scan Recipe Catalog Screen Components* on page 3-3.

SCAN RECIPE CATALOG SCREEN COMPONENTS

Screen Tools

The Catalog Screen Tools section is divided into three parts: Title Bar, Menu Bar, and the Tool Bar. An additional tool bar is located below the List window and is discussed in *List Window* on page 3-10.

Title Bar

The Title Bar contains the Control menu button, the Screen Title Bar, and the Close/Minimize icons or (See *Figure 3.3*) or the GEM Status for systems equipped with the GEM/SECS option.





• **Control Button**: This button is in the form of an icon that represents the currently displayed screen. (See *Figure 3.3.*) It is always in the same place but looks different depending on the screen currently displayed. Click on it to display its menu. (See *Figure 3.4.*)





The Control button menu contains the following options:

Table 3.1Control Button Menu

Menu Option	Description	When Active/Inactive
Restore	N/A	Disabled to prevent interference with other screen operations.
Move	N/A	Disabled to prevent interference with other screen operations.
Size	N/A	Disabled to prevent interference with other screen operations.
Minimize	N/A	Disabled to prevent interference with other screen operations.
Maximize	N/A	Disabled to prevent interference with other screen operations.
Close	Closes the current screen (window).	Active in all screens.

- Screen Title Area: This identifies the current active screen. (See *Figure 3.3.*) It is not interactive.
- Close: This button is used to close the application. It is part of the Windows formatting. Do not use this button. Instead; use the Menu Bar or Control Button functions. If the GEM Status is displayed, the Close Icon might be covered. (See *Figure 3.3.*)
- **GEM/SECS Status Display** (*for systems with the GEM option*): This area displays the current GEM status. To view the **GEM Status** dialog box double-click on the **GEM Status Display**. (See *Figure 3.3*.) Settings in the dialog box should only be changed by those with a thorough knowledge of GEM/SECS functions in the system.



CAUTION: Only system engineers familiar with the GEM operation should change any settings in the GEM Status dialog box. Changing these settings could disrupt processing.

The following table presents the possible GEM Status messages and the significance of each message.

GEM STATUS	Description
Online/Local	Online -The P-15 system is in the operating mode. Local - In this state, the P-15 system is controlling its own activity.
Online/Remote	Online -This P-15 system is in the operating mode. Remote - In this state, control of the P-15 system comes from the host.
GEM Offline	This means that the GEM communication link is suspended.
GEM Disabled	This means that the communication link is temporarily disabled for a user defined purpose.

Menu Bar

The **Menu Bars** (See *Figure 3.2*) have various drop-down menus for operating some of the system options available with the *current screen*. Each screen has its own menu bar with its own options and variables. Some of the options in the Menu Bar are also represented by icons in the **Tool Bar** and the **Command buttons**. The following tables present the content of each drop-down menu in the **Menu Bar** for the **Scan Recipe Catalog** screen.



NOTE: ne or more of the menu options in a given drop-down menu might be grayed out. This can be due to the permission status of the operator currently logged onto the system, it being an option that is not currently available because it requires other system options to be enabled before use, or the option's unavailability at this stage in the procedure.

Figur	e 3.5	Menu Bar for Scan Recipe Screen				
<u>F</u> ile	<u>E</u> dit	<u>S</u> ample	<u>V</u> acuum	H <u>o</u> st	<u>D</u> iagnostic	<u>T</u> asks

The Menu Bar for the Catalog screen contains seven active menus. Help is currently unavailable. Each menu is discussed in its own table. The Menu Bar menus are contained in *Table 3.3* through *Table 3.8*.

 Table 3.3
 File Menu Options Description

File Menu Description		Function Access	
CTADT	START Starts the currently highlighted scan procedure. The screen changes to the scan screen. In the screen depicted in <i>Figure 3.2</i> , it would start the _STEPHTH recipe scan.	Everyone has access.	
Center Object Teach Die Grid	Center Object Displays the center object in the XY View Window.	Everyone has access.	
XY View <u>Brint</u> E <u>x</u> it	Teach Die Grid Opens the Teach Die Grid procedure in the XY View Screen.	Access Restricted: Permission Required	
	XY view Brings up the XY View screen, which is the typical scan screen.	Everyone has access	
	Print Brings up the Print Manager for printing recipes.	Everyone has access	
	Exit Exits the Scan screen. This sometimes prompts the display of dialog box asking if the current changes are to be saved.	Everyone has access	

 Table 3.4
 Edit Menu Options Description

Edit Menu	Description	Function Access
<u>N</u> ew View/Modify	New This opens the Recipe Editor screen with an untitled recipe that is using the format of the highlighted recipe in the catalog screen. The recipe title is "UNTITLED" until the new recipe parameters are set and it is saved with a new name.	Access Restricted: Permission Required
✓ <u>2</u> D <u>3</u> D	View/Modify This opens the Recipe Editor screen displaying the parameters of the recipe that is highlighted on the Scan Recipe screen.	Access Restricted: Permission Required
	2D This displays the 2D list of Scan Recipes in the Catalog display area. (See <i>Figure 3.2.</i>)	Everyone has access.
	3D This displays the 3D list of Scan Recipes in the Catalog display area. (See <i>Figure 3.2.</i>)	Everyone has access.

Sample Menu	Description	Function Access
<u>M</u> anuał Load Load/Unioad	Manual Load This moves the sample stage to the Stage Door of the system (the manual load door) so a sample can be manually loaded onto the stage.	Everyone has access.
Initialize Handler SMIF Load/Unload	Load/Unload Not functional in systems without a handler.	N/A
Initialize SMIF <u>R</u> elease Cassette	Initialize Handler Not functional in systems without a handler.	N/A
	SMIF Load/Unload Not functional in systems without a handler.	N/A
	Initialize SMIF Not functional in systems without a handler.	N/A
	Release Cassette Not functional in systems without a handler.	N/A

 Table 3.5
 Sample Menu Options Description

Table 3.6 Vacuum Menu Options Description

Vacuum Menu	Description	Function Access
0//	Off This button is inactive in the P-15 because the Vacuum switch is manual.	N/A
✓ 0 <u>n</u>	On This button is inactive in the P-15 because the Vacuum switch is manual.	N/A

Host Menu	Description	Function Access
<u>G</u> o Offline <u>Attempt Online</u> ✓ Local <u>R</u> emote	Go Offline This takes the P-15 system offline. This is used to prevent the system from responding to a host during a user defined operation.	Access Restricted: Permission Required
	Attempt Online This attempts contact with the host to open the system communication link. The system then operates according to its predetermined GEM parameters.	Access Restricted: Permission Required
	Local This is an Online state where there is communication with the Host but in which the P-15 system controls the system's operation.	Access Restricted: Permission Required
	Remote This is an Online state where there is communication with the Host and in which the host controls the P-15 system operation.	Access Restricted: Permission Required

Table 3.8	Diagnostics	Menu	Options	Description
-----------	-------------	------	---------	-------------

Diagnostics Menu	Description	Function Access
Synthesize Data	Synthesize Data	Access Restricted: Permission Required

Table 3.9 Task Menu Options Description

Diagnostics Menu	Description	Function Access
Synthesize Data	Synthesize Data	Access Restricted: Permission Required

Tool Bar

The Tool Bar has eight icons that work as short cuts to functions.

Figure 3.6 Tool Bar Icons



The function of each icon is described in *Table 3.10*.

Table 3.10 Tool Bar for the Scan Recipe Catalog Screen

Tool Bar Icon	Description	Function Access
5	Prints the currently highlighted recipe.	Everyone has access.

Tool Bar Icon	Description	Function Access
START	Starts a scan using the highlighted recipe in the List window.	Everyone has access.
8	Switches to XY View screen with the current recipe active, ready for a scan to be run.	Everyone has access.
	Switches to the XY View screen with the stage rotation (theta) buttons active.	Everyone has access.
2D	 Displays the following in the List window: 2D Scan Recipes, when in the Scan Recipe Catalog screen; 2D Sequence Recipes, when in the Sequence Recipe Catalog screen 	Everyone has access.
3D	 Displays the following in the List window: 3D Scan Recipes, when in the Catalog Scan Recipe screen; 3D Sequence Recipes, when in the Catalog Sequence Recipe screen. 	Everyone has access.

 Table 3.10
 Tool Bar for the Scan Recipe Catalog Screen

Catalog Screen Access Buttons

The Catalog screen presents access to four sets of information. The Scan Recipe and the Sequence Recipe screen, provide access to the currently defined recipes available for execution in the P-15 system. Two data screens provide access to saved Sequence and Scan data file information.

Tool Bar Icon Function Access Description This button displays the list of currently available Everyone has access. Scan Recipe folders, which when chosen, Scan Recipe display their recipes in the Catalog screen's List window. (See Figure 3.2.) This button displays the list of currently available Access Restricted: Permission Required Scan Data folders, which when chosen, display Scan Data their data set in the Catalog screen's List window. (See Figure 3.2.) Optional This button displays the list of currently Everyone has access. available Sequence Recipe folders, which when Sequence Recipe chosen, present their recipes in the Catalog screen's List window. (See Figure 3.2.) Optional This button displays the list of currently Access Restricted: Permission Required available Sequence Data folders, which when Sequence Data chosen, present their data sets in the Catalog screen's List window. (See Figure 3.2.)

 Table 3.11
 Catalog Screen Access Buttons

List Window

List Window for Scan Recipe

When the **Scan Recipe** button is clicked, the List Window displays the Scan Recipe information and associated function buttons. (See *Figure 3.7*.)

Figure 3.7 Scan Recipe information in the List Window



Recipe Path Display

This area is used for navigating to a particular folder of recipes in a directory. The recipes in the List window are contained in the highlighted folder in the Recipe Path display.





Scan Recipe Name Display

This field contains the name of the currently chosen scan recipe. The recipe is chosen by clicking on a recipe in the List window so that the recipe highlights. (See *Figure 3.7.*) The recipe in the **Scan Recipe Name** display is designated to be the *current* recipe. If the **START** button, at the bottom of the Information Display window (see *Figure 3.7*), or the **START** button in the Scan Recipe Catalog tool bar (see *Figure 3.6* and *Table 3.10*), is clicked, a scan is performed using the *current* recipe.

Recipe List Window

This area contains the list of scan recipes that have been created for the various types of scans used by the system. Scan Recipes are categorized into 2D Scan recipes and 3D Scan recipes. The recipes are accessible by clicking on either the 2D button or the 3D button in the tool bar at the top of the screen. (See *Figure 3.9.*) To determine which list is active, look at the 2D and 3D buttons. The active buttons appear to be depressed and highlighted. The inactive buttons appear extruded outward. (See *Figure 3.9.*)





When a recipe in the current list is clicked on, it highlights and its name appears in the **Scan Recipe Name** display box at the top of the Information Display Window. In this state, when the **START** button in the tool bar (see *Figure 3.9* and *Table 3.10.*) or the **START** button among the function buttons at the bottom of the Information Display window (see *Figure 3.7*) is activated, a scan is performed using that recipe. In addition, the current recipe is featured in the Scan Recipe Editor screen that appears when the **View/Modify** button (a function button under the Information Display window) is activated. (See *Figure 3.7*.)

Function Buttons - Scan Recipe List Window

The function buttons, located at the bottom of the Information Display window, operate on the recipes in the recipe List window. Each button is active if it is not grayed out. The **Print**, **START**, and **XY View** buttons all duplicate functions available in a tool bar menu, and the Tool Bar. (See *Figure 3.9.*) The **New** and **View/Modify** buttons are duplicates of **Edit** menu options. (See *Table 3.4.*) If the button is not accessible, it appears as a 2D object, not 3D, and it is grayed out. Buttons might be inaccessible because:

- The system is operating in a Security level that does not grant the current Log On access permission to perform the corresponding function, or
- Because a preceding (or set-up) activity is required before the function can be activated.

Table 3.12 Scan Recipe List Window Function Access Buttons

Function Icon	Description	Function Access
<u>P</u> rint	This prints the currently highlighted Recipe.	Everyone has access. This function is also performed by the Printer icon in the tool bar.
New	This opens the Recipe Editor for the creation of a New recipe. In the recipe editor, the title is "UNTITLED" until the recipe is named. The recipe content contains the default parameters.	Access Restricted: Permission Required. The same function is also found in the Edit menu under New.
[<u>V</u> iew/Modify]	This opens the Recipe Editor allowing modification of the currently highlighted recipe.	Access Restricted: Permission Required. Same function is also found in the Edit menu under View/Modify.
START	This opens the XY View screen and begins the scan procedure associated with the currently highlighted scan recipe.	Everyone has access. This function is also performed by the START button in the Tool Bar at the top of the screen.
XY View	This opens the XY View screen with the currently highlighted recipe in place to perform a scan.	Everyone has access. This function is also performed by the XY Icon in the Tool Bar.

System Status Message

This portion of the screen contains current system status messages. These messages can contain any of the following:

- Instructions to the user.
- Warnings or Cautions
- Current system activity.

It is important to check this field for system information if the system appears to be stalled or inactive. This message field can contain valuable information for system troubleshooting.





CREATING AND EDITING A SCAN RECIPE

This section presents the procedure for creating a Scan Recipe. Included are:

- Accessing the Scan Recipe Editor where the recipe is created
- A description of the parameters required to create a recipe
- Naming the New Recipe
- Testing the New Recipe

Accessing the Scan Recipe Editor

The actual creation of a scan recipe is performed in the Editor screen. This means that recipe creation and editing is restricted to those whose password permits access to the Recipe Editor. Use the following procedure to access the Recipe Editor screen:

1. Open the Profiler Catalog screen. (See Figure 3.13.)

2. Choose the Scan Recipe button to display the Scan Recipe catalog. (See *Figure 3.11.*)

Step 2 Click on Scan Recipe	atalog]			*	Online/Local ×		
to display its contents in the	ple ⊻acuum Host Diagnostic	Vacuum Host Diagnostic Tasks Help					
Information Display window.		Scan Recipe Nam	Scan Recipe Name:				
The Scan Recipe button appears inset when its is	Recipe Path:	Recipe Name	Length Sampling (μm) Rate (Hz	Speed Creation Date (μπ/s) (γγγγ-mm-dd)	Time		
chosen. Scan Data Sequence Recipe Sequence Data		DRHND _DRMSMT _STEPHTH _STEPHTH TIPCTRL HIST	$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	100 2000-08-17 100 2000-08-1 50 2000-09-14 50 2000-09-14 50 2000-09-14 2000-09-14 100 2000-08-16	10:35 7 11:54 14:23 14:19 14:25 5 16:54		
	Generated by DRM				4 V		
		Print <u>N</u> ew	View/Modify	START	Y View		
SCAN RECIPE (ATALOG				Clear Status Clear Status		

Figure 3.11 Scan Recipe Catalog Screen

3. Choose 2D or 3D scan recipes by clicking on the appropriate icon. (See *Figure 3.12.*)



In the Scan Recipe list, a recipe is highlighted in the list. This has no effect on a New recipe. The new recipe is generated using default parameters. (See *Figure 3.13.*)



Figure 3.13 Scan Recipe Catalog Screen

Click on **New**, located among the function buttons at the bottom of the Information Display window. (See *Figure 3.13*.)

Recipe Editor for 2D and 3D Scans

Introduction

When **New** is clicked, the **Recipe Editor** appears with an UNTITLED recipe. (See *Figure 3.14*.) The UNTITLED recipe contains the default scan parameters. The **Recipe Editor** has eight windows for the 2D recipes and nine for the 3D recipes that, together, contain all the variable scan recipe parameters. Each of these windows is accessed through its own access button on the left side of the **Recipe Editor** Screen. (See *Figure 3.14*.) These windows are discussed one at a time, starting with the top button and working down, until all the parameters required for defining a recipe are explained.

The Title bar shows that the recipe name is currently UNTITLED and the screen is Recipe Editor .	Profiler - (Recipe Editor - **UNTITLED**) X Becipe Options Help 20 Scan Scan Parameter Definition 20 Scan X Scan Size (µm): 13.000
Each Parameter button displays its parameters in the Information Display window.	Feature Detection Scan Speed (µm/s): 20 Fiters Cursors Scan Speed (µm/s): 20 General Parameters Multi-Scan Average : 1 Roughness Wavness Scan Direction: Icach Bearing Ratio Scan Direction: Icach
The Information Display window contains the parameter set related to the currently activated Parameter button. The current Parameter button appears to be indented, as the Scan Parameter Definition does in this illustration.	Cuting Deprin High Spot Count Peak Count Approx. Total Itrace (s): 0:0:0:0:9 Setup Analysis Tools Sytus: Appled Force (mg): 1:00 Recommended Maximum (mg): 0:05 Sytus: Appled Force (mg): 1:00 Ranger/Resolution: 6:5um/0.0033A Profile Type : Ir Substr. Clear Status

Figure 3.14 Recipe Editor for a 2D UNTITLED Recipe

Scan Parameter Definition Window



3D Scan contains scan characteristics. (The 2D version contains fewer	3D Scan X Scan Size (µm); 13.000 💌 Y Scan Size (µm); 13.000 💌
variables.)	Scan Speed (µm/s): 20 ▼ Traces: 50 Sampling Rate (Hz): 2000 ▼ Y Spacing (µm): 0.260
Scan Time category contains parameters that are results of above actions.	Scan Direction:
Stylus category contains	Scan Time: Individual Trace (s): 0.7 Total Data Points: 65050 Approx. Total (hr:min:s): 0 : 1 : 7.7 Point Interval (μm): 0.010000
parameters.	Stylus: Applied Force (mg): 1.00 Recommended Maximum (mg): 0.05
Vertical Ranging category contains vertical size (height, depth and scan profile of the scan.)	Stylus Radius (µm): 0.02 Vertical Ranging: Range/Resolution: 6.5um/0.0039A ▼ Profile Type : -T_r ▼

The Scan Parameter Definition button displays four categories of 2D or 3D scan parameters: 2D Scan or 3D Scan; Scan Time; Stylus; and Vertical Ranging.

2D Scan Category Parameters - Scan Parameters Definition

The parameters defined in this category deal with the actual mechanics of the 2D scan. Each is discussed in *Figure 3.16*.

Figure 3.16 2D Scan Category Parameters

– 2D Scan X Scan Size (μm): [90		
Scan Speed (μm/s): Sampling Rate (Hz): Multi-Scan Average :	100 V 200 V 1 V		- Show Position: -
Scan Direction:	\rightarrow	Ieach	Start: O Center: O End: O

- 1. **X Scan Size** (μm). This variable sets the **length** of the actual scan. It is set in one of two ways:
 - Click on the menu arrow at the right of the X Scan Size field to display the drop-down menu. Click on the desired number in the menu. The number should appear in the field. The variables in the drop-down menu range, in various increments, from 1 5000 μm. (See *Figure 3.17.*) For the *standard* P-15, 80000 μm is the longest possible scan. The *long scan* P-15 can scan 200000 μm.
 - Alternative: Double-click in the X Scan Size field to highlight the current number. Enter the desired number in microns (µm). This variable is helpful when a specific scan length is required that is not in the drop-down menu.



NOTE: The scan length can also be changed when using the Teach function. See Step *6. on page 3-22* for more details. See the Note.

Figure 3.17 X Scan Size (µm)



Step 1 Click on the menu arrow to display the drop-down menu. To choose the number of microns (μ m) in the scan length, click on the appropriate number.

Scan Speed (μm/s) - This parameter sets the speed at which the scan is performed. It has a range between 1 μm/s and 25000 μm/s, with numerous options within this range displayed in its drop-down menu. (See *Figure 3.18.*)



Figure 3.18 Scan Speed Drop-down Menu

The Scan Speed should be determined in conjunction with the stylus tip size and the **Applied Force** setting. *Table 3.13* lists some recommended safe scan speeds for operation of the P-15 systems. Following the guidelines in the table should protect the stylus tip and the sample:

Table 3.13 Recommended Scan Speeds

Stylus Tip Size	Applied Force	Scan Speed	Related Condition
Submicron Tips	0.05 - 0.10 mg.	Not to exceed 10 μ m/s	Soft materials*
2 μm Tip	0.5 mg.	2.0 - 10 μm/s	Soft materials*
2 μm Tip	1 - 2 mg.	Not to exceed 200 $\mu\text{m/s}$	Normal scans

*Soft Materials - such as copper, gold, aluminum, and photoresist

The following cautions are important in determining a safe scan speed.



CAUTION: When scanning soft material (e.g., copper, aluminum, and photoresist) follow the recommended applied force and scan speed for each listed stylus.



CAUTION: If the scan speed is set too fast when using a small applied force, features might be missed or inaccurately traced.

3. Sampling Rate (Hz) - is the frequency at which data points are collected. (It sets the number of data points that are collected per second during a scan.) Optimum data collection is determined by this number in conjunction with the scan speed, the length of the scan, and the size of the stylus tip. The Sampling Rate should be set so that each data point has meaning. In general, as the scan progresses, the Sampling Rate should not calculate out to be greater than 1/4 the radius of the

stylus tip. Any more than that reduces the significance of each data point. (See *Figure 3.21* and *Figure 3.22*.) Collecting more data points does not necessarily improve the accuracy of the scan results and can cause slower system calculations (as could be the case when using Multi-Scan averaging with an unnecessarily high Sampling Rate). (See the example below.)

EXAMPLE: The following demonstrates the relation between scan speed, scan length, and Sampling Rate:

- Scan Speed = $10 \,\mu\text{m/s}$ Scan Length = $100 \,\mu\text{m}$
- Sampling Rate = 20 Hz Stylus radius = $2 \mu m$

20 data points are collected each second during a 10 second scan (20 Hz.)

200 data points are collected during the total scan.

200 data points over a 100 μ m scan means that 2 data points were collected per micron during the scan.

Figure 3.19 illustrates the impact of stylus radius in generating a scan trace.

Figure 3.19 Scan Trace Comparison - Large vs. Small Stylus Radius



Comparing the Scan Path of the large radius stylus and the small radius stylus, assessment can be made regarding the validity of higher frequency data collection. In general, the larger radius styli do not detect the smallest features. They give traces that can resemble a statistical average. Little is gained by increasing the number of data points collected during a large radius stylus scan, if the stylus is not capable of capturing the smallest surface features. (See *Figure 3.19* and *Figure 3.21*.)

Figure 3.20 Data Collection Frequency







If the Stylus chosen is small enough to detect the features of interest in the scan, then a sampling rate should be chosen that accurately records the level of detail required from the scan. For a small stylus radius, as the Sampling Rate increases, assuming the speed is left the same, the number of data points collected forms a trace that comes closer to the actual scan path features. (See *Figure 3.22.*)

3-20



Figure 3.22 Data Collection When Using a Small Radius Stylus

Choose the desired Sampling Rate by clicking on the menu arrow next to Sampling Rate field. The recommended range is presented in the drop-down menu (5 Hz - 1000 Hz). Click on the desired rate from the menu.



Figure 3.23 2D Scan Options With Sampling Rate Menu

4. **Multi-Scan Average** - This is a 2D option that allows the user to repeat a single scan up to 10 times so that the scan data can be averaged by the number of scans performed. This feature provides an opportunity to level out the noise factors in a scan. The optimum Multi-Scan Average is between **3** and **5** times.

	ZD XS	Scan Scan Size (μm): 20
Step 4 Multi-Scan Average sets the number of times a scan is run before the data is averaged to present the scan for analysis. Clic on the menu arrow next to the variable box and click on the desired number of scans.	s Soa San K Mul Soa	In Speed (µm/s): 100 Impling Rate (Hz): 200 ti-Scan Average : 1 In Direction: 2 Show Position: Start: C Leach C End: C
	Clicl Clicl 5. Scar to rig Cha oppo	k on the menu arrow next to the Multi-Scan Average to display its menu. k on the number of scans to be performed for averaging the data. Direction - Arrow - This option dictates the direction of the scan, from left ght for from right to left for a scale in the point the basis of the scan birection: Click on the arrow to cause it to point the posite direction.
-	*	NOTE: DO NOT use unless it is absolutely necessary. The recommended direction is left to right because it gives better repeatability, protects the stylus, and provides better data.

Figure 3.24 2D Scan Options With Multi-Scan Average Menu

Figure 3.25 2D S	can Options With	Scan Direction Arrow
------------------	------------------	----------------------

	-2D Scan X Scan Size (μm):	90 💌		
Step 5 The arrow dictates which direction the scan proceeds in. To change the scan direction, click on the arrow and it changes to indicate scan direction.	Scan Speed (µm/s): Sampling Rate (H2): Multi-Scan Average : Scan Direction:		Ieach	Show Position: Start: © Center: © End: ©

6. Scan Direction - Teach - When the Teach button is clicked on, it displays the Teach Scan Length screen. This screen allows the user to set the starting, center, or end positions of a scan. The scan length is already set in the X Scan Size parameter. Use the following procedure to set the Teach... position:



Figure 3.26 2D Scan Options - Show Position:

a. Before clicking the Teach... button, the desired reference position must be chosen. This is accomplished in the Show Position box, to the right of the Teach... button. Click in the radio button next to the desired reference position, Start, Center, or End, that is to be established with respect to the scan feature in the Teach Scan Length screen. (See *Figure 3.26*.)

Table 3.14	Show Pos	ition Options

Option	Description	Graphic Representation
Start	The Start setting is used in the Video portion of the XY view screen to position the start of the scan at the intersection of the Video screen crosshairs. Wherever the user clicks in the video image, that position becomes the starting scan position, and appears at the center of the Video screen, with the scan distance presented as an arrow.	Click here to position Start
Center	The Center setting is used in the Video portion of the XY view screen to position the center of the scan at the intersection of the Video screen crosshairs. Wherever the user clicks in the video image, that position becomes the center of the scan, and appears at the center of the Video screen, with the scan distance presented as an arrow.	Click here to position Center Outcome
End	The End setting is used in the Video portion of the XY view screen to position the end of the scan at the intersection of the Video screen crosshairs. Wherever the user clicks in the video image, that position becomes the end of the scan, and appears at the center of the Video screen, with the scan distance presented as an arrow.	Click here to position End Outcome

b. Locate the desired feature in the XY View portion of the screen. Click on the reference position (start, center, or end). The screen then positions the scan length arrow over the scan feature according to the chosen position. The reference position is at the center of the video screen crosshairs. (See *Table 3.14.*)



NOTE: When in the **Teach Scan Length** (XY view) screen, it is possible to change the scan length by clicking on a position in the video screen and dragging the new length. If the scan is immediately started from the Teach Scan Length screen, it scans the newly defined (dragged) distance even though the original recipe scan length is different. However, if the new distance is not saved it does not appear on the original recipe. If it is saved by clicking OK or actually saving the changes from the menu, the recipe then reflects the newly dragged scan distance.





an Length 200,000

Clear Stat

3D Scan Category Parameters - Scan Parameters Definition

The parameters discussed in this section are those that are **additions to** or **differ from** the 2D parameters already presented. For information on parameters that are identical for 2D and 3D scans, see the descriptions in the 2D recipe section. (See *Table 3.15* for identification of which parameter settings are 2D or 3D.)

Parameter Setting	2D, 3D or Both	Description and Location
X Scan Size	Both	X direction scan length; Step 1. on page 3-17.
Y Scan Size	3D	The length in the Y-direction through which the X-direction scans are made at each Y Spacing interval.
Scan Speed	Both	The speed at which the scan is performed.
Sampling Rate	Both	The rate at which data points on the scan are recorded for analysis.
Traces	3D	This is the number of scans that are made to encompass the Y-distance requirement.
Multi-Scan Average	2D	The number of single identical scans which are performed and used to create a scan data set that represents the average of the scans.
Spacing	3D	This is the distance between X scans performed across the Y direction of the 3D scan area.
Scan Direction	Both	The direction in which the scan is performed.
Teach	Both	Displays the Teach Scan Length screen that is used to determine the start, center or end of the scan. Can also be used to drag a new scan length.
Show Position	Both	Displays the current position and provides an opportunity to set a new position at which the scan, of scan length set in X Scan Size , is started, is centered, or ends.

 Table 3.15
 3D Scan Parameters Summary

Y Scan Size (µm)

This parameter defines the size, in the Y-direction, of the 3D area to be scanned. It is the area across which the number of scans defined in the parameter **Traces** are divided up. (See *Figure 3.29 on page 3-26.*)



NOTE: If the variable in the **Spacing** parameter is changed, the **Y Scan Size** changes to accommodate the number of **Traces** at the new **Spacing** distance.

Setting or Changing Y Scan Size - Use one of the following procedures:

- Click the menu arrow to the right of the **Y Scan Size** field and click on the desired size.
- Highlight the current number and type in the new number. (See also **Automatic Parameter Adjustment**: in Step *on page 3-27*.)

— 3D Scan — X Scan Size (μm):	13.000 💌 (Υ Scan Size (μm);	50.000	Set the Y Scan Size by clicking on the menu arrow and
Scan Speed (µm/s): Sampling Rate (Hz):	20 • 2000 •	Traces: Υ Spacing (μm):	50 1.000 Show Position: –	choosing the desired size, or by highlighting the current
Scan Direction:	\rightarrow	Ieach	Start: O Center: O End: O	number and typing in the new number.

Figure 3.28 3D Scan Parameters

Traces

This assigns the number of scans that are made in the X-direction across the **Y Scan Size** direction. In *Figure 3.29*, the number in the **Traces** variable box would be **8**.

Figure 3.29 Traces - Scan Perimeter with Traces



If the **Y** Scan Size is set [Y Scan Size = (Traces -1) x Y Spacing], when the **Traces**: parameter is entered, the **Y** Spacing parameter automatically adjusts to reflect the appropriate spacing between scans.

Setting the Number of Traces: To change the number of Traces in a 3D scan, highlight the current Traces value and type in the new number of traces. (See also Automatic Parameter Adjustment: in *Y Spacing (mm)* on page 3-27.)

the

—3D Scan X Scan Size (μm):	13.000	Υ Scan Size (μm):	50.000	To set or change the number of traces in a 3D
Scan Speed (µm/s): Sampling Rate (Hz):	20 • 2000 •	Traces: Υ Spacing (μm):	50 1.000 Show Position:	current Traces variable and type in the new
Scan Direction:	\rightarrow	Leach	Start: O Center: O End: O	number.

Figure 3.30 3D Scan - Traces Parameter

Y Spacing (µm)

This variable sets the distance in the Y-direction between X-direction scan traces in a 3D scan.

The spacing is very important to final 3D data collection set because, together with the stylus radius, it determines the essential resolution of the feature that is scanned. (See Step 3 on page -18.) Consider to following examples:

- If the distance between scans is too great with respect to the stylus radius, important variations in the scanned feature might be missed.
- Conversely, if using a larger stylus, and the distance between scans is very small, many of the data points are essentially redundant and, therefore, meaningless.

Automatic Parameter Adjustment: - In general, a connection exists in the software such that, when certain parameters are changed, other parameters are readjusted to accommodate the changes. The adjustments occur between the Y Scan Size, Traces, and Y Spacing parameters. Occasionally, after setting a parameter, the user might click on one of the other parameters and notice a minor adjustment to the parameter that had just been set. This happens to balance the numbers between Y Scan Size, Traces, and Y Spacing. (See *Table 3.16*.)

Change This Parameter	Adjusts These Parameter	Conditions Effecting Adjustment
Y Scan Size	Y Scan Size	Occasionally makes minor adjustments to the newly set number to accommodate the Y Spacing or Traces.
	Y Spacing	
	Traces	Occasionally makes minor adjustments (no more the \pm 1) to the newly set number, to accommodate the Y Scan Size and Y Spacing. Usually only for scans less than 100 μ m.
Traces	Y Scan Size	This change is normally small, changing to accommodate the spacing required to perform the number of traces.
	Y Spacing	
	Traces	Occasionally makes minor adjustments (no more the \pm 1) to the newly set number, to accommodate the Y Scan Size and Y Spacing. Usually only for scans less than 100 μ m.
Y Spacing	Traces	
	Y Scan Size	This change is normally small, changing to accommodate the spacing required to perform the number of traces.
	Y Spacing	Occasionally makes minor adjustment to the newly set number to accommodate the Y Scan Size or Traces.
Scan Speed	No Changes	
Sampling Rate	No Changes	

Table 3.16 Automatic Parameter Adjustments

1. **Show Position** - For 3D scans, the three options in this box are used for positioning the scan area parameters box, not to indicate the actual Start and End of the scan. One of these options must be chosen in conjunction with the **Teach**... position function button next to the **Show Position** box. (See *Table 3.17*.)

Selecting An Option: Click in the radio button of the desired position.

Show Position Option	Description	Graphic Representation
Start	The Start setting is used in the Video portion of the XY view screen to position the upper left corner of the scan area box in the Video screen crosshairs. Wherever the user clicks in the video image, that position becomes the upper left corner of the scan area box, and appears at the center of the Video screen. This is not the actual place where the scan starts. Start only defines the upper left corner of the scan area box. Literal START is near the lower left corner.	Click here to position Start
Center	The Center setting is used in the Video portion of the XY view screen to position the center of the scan area box in the center of the Video screen crosshairs. Wherever the user clicks in the video image, that position becomes the center of the scan area box, and appears at the center of the Video screen.	Click here to position Center Outcome
End	The End setting is used in the Video portion of the XY view screen to position the lower right corner of the scan area box in the center of the Video screen crosshairs. Wherever the user clicks in the video image, that position becomes the end of the scan area box, and appears at the center of the Video screen. This is not the actual place where the scan ends. End only defines the lower right corner of the scan area box. Literal END is near the upper right corner.	Click here to position End Outcome Scan Feature

 Table 3.17
 Show Position
 Options

2. **Teach**... - This function takes the feature and positions it in the scan field according to the reference position option chosen in the **Show Position** box. (See also Step *1. on page 3-29.*)

a. Before clicking the Teach... button, the desired reference position must be chosen. This is accomplished in the Show Position box, to the right of the Teach... button. Click in the radio button next to the desired reference position, Start, Center, or End, that is to be established with respect to the scan feature in the Teach Scan Length screen. (See *Figure 3.31*.)



Step 2 Click on the Teach button to display the Teach Scan Length screen where, in the XY View, the exact location	– 3D Scan X Scan Size (µm): Scan Speed (µm/s):	90.000	Y Scan Size (μm): Traces:	90.000	Step 1 Before activating the Teach button, click in the radio button representing the reference
of the chosen reference position can be established.	Sampling Flate (Hz): Scan Direction:		Spacing (µm):	Show Position: Start: © Center: © Erid. ©	f the reference position to be used in the Teach Scan Length screen.
					1

b. Locate the desired sample feature in the Video portion of the screen. Click on the position that corresponds to the reference position (Start, Center, or End), that is on or near the scan feature. The screen positions the scan area box over the scan feature according to the chosen position. The chosen position (Start, Center, or End) is at center screen, with the scan area box positioned accordingly. (See *Figure 3.32, Figure 3.33 & Figure 3.34.*)







NOTE: When in the **Teach Scan Length** screen, it is possible to change the scan area by clicking on a position in the video screen and dragging the box to form a new area. If the scan is immediately started from the **Teach Scan Length** screen, it scans the newly defined (dragged) area even though the original recipe scan area is different. However, if the new area parameters are not saved, they do not appear in the original recipe. If they are saved by clicking **OK** or actually saving the changes using the **File** menu, the recipe will reflect the newly dragged scan distance.

Assume that the features represented in the illustration were on the video screen.

- The feature with the dashed circle around it is the object of the scan,
- The white box represents the scan area defined by X Scan Size and Y Scan Size,
- Start is the Show Position.

Clicking here places the scan area box around the feature and sets this spot at the center of the view screen. (See results in *Figure 3.34*.)



Figure 3.33

The preceding illustration demonstrates the use of the **Teach...** function from the 3D Scan parameters in the Recipe Editor. The illustration uses the **Start** option from the **Show Position** box. The results are demonstrated in *Figure 3.34*.

Teaching a Scan Position Using Start Show Position





The scan area box aligns with the **Start** position at the point on the screen where the user clicks.



NOTE: The simplest way to set up a 3D scan is to choose **Center** as the **Show Position** and click directly in the center of the scan feature. This places the center of the feature in the center of the scan area box, and places the scan area box at the center of the screen crosshairs.

Scan Time Parameters (2D and 3D) - Scan Parameters Definition

The **Scan Time** parameters box displays time and data point values, broken down into general components. (See *Figure 3.35*.) No values can be set or defined in this portion of the screen. These values are read only because they are determined by parameters set in other fields.



NOTE: These values are system generated from parameters set in other fields. This value **might be inaccurate up to 20%** of the actual value. Use these values only for casual reference.

Figure 3.35 Scan Time - Scan Parameters Definition

	⊤ 3D Scan X Scan Size (µm); 13.000 ⊻ Y Scan Size (µm);	13.000
The Scan Time parameters	Scan Speed (μm/s): 20 Traces: Sampling Rate (Hz): 2000 Y Spacing (μm):	50 0.260
	Scan Direction:	Start: O Center: O End: O
are display only.	Scan Time: Individual Trace (s): 0.7 Total Data Points: Approx. Total (h::min:s): 0 : 1 : 7.7 Point Interval (µm):	65050
	Stylus: Applied Force (mg): 1.00 Stylus Radius (µm): 0.02	num (mg): 0.05
	Vertical Ranging: Range/Resolution: 6.5um/0.0039A V Profile Type : Tr V	

Individual Traces (s)

This defines the number of seconds required to complete one scan. This time parameter divides **X** Scan Size (μ m) by Scan speed (μ m/s) and adds the result to the approximate move time. (See *Figure 3.36*.)



CAUTION: The following equation is not the actual equation used to produce the variables. The equation only takes into consideration the simplest and most general components used to produce the value displayed in the field. Use generate values only for casual reference.

For 2D and 3D [X Scan Size / Scan speed] + move time = Individual Traces (s)



Individual Traces (s) parameter is calculated using		A Scan Size (μm); 13.000 Y Scan Size (μm); 13.000 Y
the X Scan Size (μ m) and the		
Scan Speed (µm/s) settings.	- (Scan Speed (µm/s): 20 Traces: 50
The calculated time is added to		Sampling Rate (Hz): 2000 🔽 Υ Spacing (μm): 0.260
the move time to give the total		Show Position:
Individual Traces (s) time.		Start: O
		Scan Direction:
		Scan Time:
	1	Individual Trace (s): 0.7 Total Data Points: 65059
		Approx. Total (hr:min:s): 0 : 1 : 7.7 Point Interval (μm): 0.016000

Total (hr:min:s) - This is the total time that it takes to complete the set of scans defined in the scan recipe section, **2D** or **3D Scan**.



CAUTION: Generating the value for the **Approx. Total (hr:min:s)** is very complicated. This variable can be inaccurate up to 20% in either direction. Use the generated time only for casual reference.



	-3D Scan			
	X Scan Size (μm):	200.000 💌	Υ Scan Size (μm):	200.000 💌
	Scan Speed (µm/s):	50 💌	Traces:	10
	Sampling Rate (Hz):	100 💌	Υ Spacing (μm):	20.000
				- Show Position: -
T (14)	Scan Direction:		Ieach	Start: © Center: © End: ©
Approx. Iotal (nr:min:s:).	Care Time			
	Judicidual Tara (c)	4.0	T-I-ID-I- D-I-I-	4010
	Individual Trace (s);	4.0	Fotal Data Points:	4010
	Approx. Total (hr:min	:s): 0 : 1 : 59.1	Point Interval (μm):	0.500000

Number of Data Points: - This is the total number of scan data points collected during the scan.



CAUTION: The following equation is not the actual equation used to produce the variables, it only approximates it. This equation only takes into consideration the simplest and most general components used to produce the value displayed in the field. *Use generate values only for casual reference.*

For 3D	[(X Scan Size / Scan Speed) x Sampling Rate x Traces] + the number of traces = Number of Data Points
For 2D	[X Scan Size / Scan Speed] ${f x}$ Sampling Rate ${f x}$ Multi-Scan Average

The approximate value is seen in the following example





= Number of Data Points

Point Interval

Point Interval is the distance between data points in the X-direction of each trace.

For 2D and 3D

Scan Speed (µm) / Sampling Rate (Hz) = Point Interval:



Point Interval is the distance between data points in each	−3D Scan X Scan Size (μm):	500.000	Υ Scan Size (μm):	103.000
X-direction scan trace.	Scan Speed (µm/s):	100 💌	Traces:	10
It is defined as the	Sampling Rate (Hz):	200 💌	Spacing (µm):	10.000
Scan Speed divided by				Show Position:
the Sampling Rate.	Scan Direction:	\rightarrow	Teach	Start: Contor:
				End: O
	Scan Time:			
	Individual Trace (s):	7	Number of Data Point	s: 10000
	Total (hr:min:s):	0:1:7	Point Interval (µm):	0.500

Stylus Parameters (2D and 3D) - Scan Parameters Definition

The **Stylus** parameters box contains those variables that deal with the stylus operation. Only the Applied force variable is accessible for change in this screen.

Figure 3.40 Stylus Parameters (2D and 3D)

	3D Scan X Scan Size (μm): 13.000 ▼ Y Scan Size (μm): 13.000 ▼	
	Scan Speed (μm/s): 20 ▼ Traces: 50 Sampling Rate (Hz): 2000 ▼ Y Spacing (μm): 0.260	
Applied Force is the only parameter in Stylus that is adjustable. Click on the menu arrow to display the menu and	Scan Direction:	
choose the force.	Scan Time: Individual Trace (s): 0.7 Total Data Points: 65050 Approx. Total (hr:min:s): 0 : 1 : 7.7 Point Interval (µm): 0.010000	
	Stylus: Applied Force (mg): 1.00 Recommended Maximum (mg): U.U5 Stylus Radius (µm): 0.02	
	Vertical Ranging: Range/Resolution: 6.5um/0.0033A	6.5 mm is the hi gain range.

Applied Force (mg)

This is the force exerted by the stylus on the sample surface. With each different stylus radius there are recommended limits that should be taken into consideration when setting the Applied Force. The Applied Force should not exceed the recommended maximum force. (See Figure 3.41.)



Applied Force is the only adjustable parameter in the Stylus box.



 Table 3.18
 Stylus Force Ranges for the Different Head Configurations

MH2If	MH2sr	MH2xr
0.05-50 mg in <i>hi gain</i> range (0.1 mg for medium and low ranges)	1-50 mg	0.5-50 mg

Changing the **Applied Force** setting:

- 1. Click on the menu arrow next to the variable box to display its menu.
- 2. Click on the desired force setting. (*Figure 3.42.*)



To change the Applied	Stylus:
Force value, click on	Applied Force (mg):
the menu arrow to the	Stulue Redius (use)
right of the variable box	
to display the menu.	Vertical Ranging: 0.50
Click on the desired	Range/Resolution: 2
force setting.	Profile Type :



NOTE: The force setting must be within the range of the head being used or a message is generated that requires the user to choose an appropriate setting.

Stylus Radius (µm)

Stylus Radius is the manufacturers stated radius of the stylus. The stylus radius cannot be changed in this screen.



CAUTION: Recommendations and limits are only correct if the "Stylus Change Procedure" was followed when the stylus was installed.

Use the Stylus Change Procedure to change the stylus radius setting. (See *Stylus Change Procedure* on page 4-1.)

Recommended Maximum (mg)

Each stylus type is associated with a maximum applied force setting. The maximum setting is deemed to be safe for the stylus and the sample while performing normal scans. This force should not be exceeded.



CAUTION: See *Table 3.13 on page 3-18* for special recommended force limitation when using any submicron tip on a soft sample. This number is set during the Stylus Change Procedure. If that procedure is not used when changing a stylus the recommended force could be incorrect. If a user sets the wrong Applied Force and exceeds the actual recommended force, stylus damage or potential damage of soft sample surfaces could occur.

Vertical Ranging Parameters (2D and 3D) - Scan Parameters Definition

Vertical Ranging contains two parameters: **Range/Resolution** and **Profile Type**. These two parameters are used together to set up the system for:

- Range: The maximum feature measurement limit (theoretical), up or down, that is considered when scanning for a feature,
- Resolution: The theoretical vertical resolution of the scan of a feature.

Three set of ranges are available depending on the type of head the instrument uses. The primary differences between the ranges are in their resolution capabilities, and the ability in the 131 μ m, 327 μ m, and 1000 μ m range to set the direction in which the range is applied. The ranges are described below.



Recipe Options Help	tor - 13X13]
Scan Parameter Definition	30 Scan X Scan Size (µm); 13.000 ▼ Y Scan Size (µm); 13.000 ▼
Feature Detection Filters Cursors General Parameters	Scan Spead (µm/s): 20 Traces: 50 Sampling Rate (Hz): 2000 Y Spacing (µm): 0.260 Show Position: - Start: C
Roughness Waviness Bearing Ratio Cutting Depth	Scan Direction:
High Spot Count Peak Count	Scan time: 0.1 7 Total Data Points: 65050 Anores: Joint Harris (1997) 0.1 7 Pand Interval limit: 0.00000000000000000000000000000000000
3D Cursors	Stylus:
Setup Analysis Tools	Applied Force (mg): 1.00 Y Recommended Maximum (mg): 0.05 Stylus Radius (µm): 0.02 0.02 0.05 <t< td=""></t<>
	Vetical Ranging: Range/Resolution: 6.5um/0.0033A Profile Type : - Ir
	Substr. Clear Status

Range/Resolution

This parameter sets the maximum size limit of the features that can be scanned in each given range, and the minimum feature size that can be resolved (positively detected). Three ranges are available. (See *Table 3.19*.)

Table 3.19 Range and Resolution Scan Parameters for the MH2If Head

Vertical Range (µm)	Resolution (Å)
± 3.2 (6.5 total)	0.004
± 13 (26 total)	0.016
± 65 (131 total)	0.08

 Table 3.20
 Range and Resolution Scan Parameters for the MH2sr Head

Vertical Range (µm)	Resolution (Å)
± 6.5 (13 total)	0.008
± 32 (64 total)	0.04
± 173 (327 total)	0.2

The VERTICAL RANGING parameters box defines:

1. Which vertical features are scanned; those in the up, down, or both up and down direction, from the scans starting level.

2. The maximum theoretical height, depth or both height and depth of features that are considered, along with the minimum feature size that, theoretically, can be clearly resolved.
| Vertical Range (µm) | Resolution (Å) | | |
|---------------------|----------------|--|--|
| ± 6.5 (13 total) | 0.008 | | |
| ± 65 (131 total) | 0.08 | | |
| ± 500 (1000 total) | 0.6 | | |

 Table 3.21
 Range and Resolution Scan Parameters for the MH2xr Head



NOTE: The Resolution numbers in *Table 3.19*, *Table 3.20*, and *Table 3.21* are theoretical. Noise levels could greatly effect the resolution.

Figure 3.44 Vertical Ranging - Range/Resolution Menu

To choose the $131 \,\mu\text{m}$ range, dick on the menu arrow next to the variable box to display the menu. Click on $131 \,\mu\text{m}$.

_ ^{Vertical}	Ranging:			
Range/	Resolution:	131um/0.357A	-	
Profile T	ype:	131um/0.357A 26um/0.015625A 6.5um/0.0039A		

131 μ m, 327 μ m, and 1000 μ m ranges - The largest features are scanned using these ranges. In this range, using the **Profile Type** menu (see *Figure 3.45* and *Table 3.22*), the user can specify which features are considered for analysis:

- Features that step UP a maximum of 131 µm from the scan's starting point;
- Features that step DOWN a maximum of 131 μm from the scan's starting point;
- Or features that step ±65 μm, BOTH UP AND DOWN, from the scan's starting point

Choosing the 131 μ m, 327 μ m, or 1000 μ m range:

Click on the menu arrow to display the menu. Click on the desired option. (See *Figure 3.44*.)

Range Limitations for 131 µm (MH2lf head):

- The limit for a scan with the Profile Type $-\int_{-}^{-}$ is $\pm 65 \ \mu m$.
- The limit for a scan with the Profile Type \int is approximately $65 \ \mu\text{m} + (1/2 \ \text{x} \ 65 \ \mu\text{m}) \approx 100 \ \mu\text{m}.$
- The limit for a scan with the Profile Type $_$ is approximately -65 µm + (1/2 x -65 µm) \approx -100 µm

Range Limitations for 327 µm (MH2sr head):

- The limit for a scan with the Profile Type $-\int_{-}^{-}$ is ±163 µm.
- The limit for a scan with the Profile Type $160 \ \mu\text{m} + (1/2 \ \text{x} \ 160 \ \mu\text{m}) \approx 240 \ \mu\text{m}.$ is approximately
- The limit for a scan with the Profile Type $_$ is approximately -160 µm + (1/2 x -160 µm) \approx -240 µm

Range Limitations for 1000 µm (MH2xr head):

- The limit for a scan with the Profile Type $-\int_{-}^{-}$ is $\pm 500 \ \mu m$.
- The limit for a scan with the Profile Type \int is approximately $500 \ \mu\text{m} + (1/2 \ \text{x} \ 500 \ \mu\text{m}) \approx 750 \ \mu\text{m}.$
- The limit for a scan with the Profile Type $_$ is approximately -500 µm + (1/2 x -500 µm) \approx -750 µm.



NOTE: The best results are obtained from the $-\int_{-}^{-}$ profile.

Saturated Data Points

If, in the course of a scan, the upper limit of any one of the ranges is reached and 50 data points are collected beyond the limit, the system aborts the scan and a message is issued reporting that there are too many saturation data points. The scan appears as complete, however, the end of the trace is only a continuation of the last data point, not actual scan data.



For the 131, 327, and 1000 μ m ranges, the three Profile Types allow the user to choose features that go up or down from the sample surface the full range, or split the difference between up and down features.



26 µm and **64** µm Ranges - These are the most common scan range for small scans. They offer the opportunity to scan features which are ± 13 µm or ± 32 µm from the scan starting point. These ranges do not offer the Up only or Down only option. (See *Table 3.22*.) If larger features are to be scanned, use the 131 µm, 327 µm, or 1000 µm range.

Choosing the 26 μ m or 64 μ m range:

Click on the menu arrow to display the menu. Click on the 26 or 64 μm range.

Range Limitations for 26 µm:

• The limits for a scan with the Profile Type $-\Box$ is ±13 µm

Range Limitations for 64 µm:

• The limits for a scan with the Profile Type \neg is $\pm 32 \ \mu m$.

If, in the course of a scan, the upper limit is reached and 50 data points are collected beyond the limit, the system aborts the scan and a message is issued reporting that there are too many saturation data points. The scan appears as complete, however, the end of the trace is only a continuation of the last data point, not actual scan data.

6.5 μ **m and 13** μ **m Ranges** - These are the most sensitive scan range. It is for scans of features 3.2 μ m or smaller above or below the sample surface. This range does not offer the Up only or Down only option. (See *Table 3.22*.) If larger features are to be scanned, use either the medium range or the largest range.

Choosing 6.5 μ m or 13 μ m range:

Click on the menu arrow to display the menu. Click on $6.5 \mu m/0.015625 Å$.

Range Limitations for 6.5 µm:

• The limits for a scan with the Profile Type \neg is $\pm 3.2 \ \mu m$

Range Limitations for 13 µm:

• The limits for a scan with the Profile Type -1 is $\pm 6.5 \,\mu m$.

Saturated Data Points

If, in the course of a scan, the upper limit is reached and 50 data points are collected beyond the limit, the system aborts the scan and a message is issued reporting that there are too many saturation data points. The scan appears as complete, however, the end of the trace is only a continuation of the last data point, not actual scan data.

Profile Type	Range	Scan	Description
- <u></u>	131 μm 327 μm 1000 μm	131 μ m scans features that are 65 μ m up or down from the scan's starting point.	During a scan using this profile type, if the scan goes out of range and stays out of range for 50 data points, the scan is aborted.
		327 μm scans features that are 160 μ m up or down from the	When operating in this range, the sensor arm containing the stylus can be very near its vertical limit capacity.
	scan's starting point. 1000 μm scans features that are 500 μ m up or down from the		When it goes out of range for 50 data points on a step up , the scan is aborted. If the scan continued to go further out of range, at some point the sensor could be damaged.
			When it goes out of range for 50 data points on a step down , the scan is aborted. If the scan continued to go further out of range, the stylus would float out of contact with the sample.
- <u>1</u> -	64 μm	This scans features that are 32 μ m up or down from the scan's starting point.	During a scan using this profile type, if the scan goes out of the $\pm 32 \ \mu m$ range and stay out of range for 50 data points, the scan is aborted.
			These limits are in the software. The system sends a saturation message when the scan is aborted.
- <u>_</u>	26 µm	This scans features that are 13 μ m up or down from the scan's starting point.	During a scan using this profile type, if the scan goes out of the ±13 μ m range and stay out of range for 50 data points, the scan is aborted.
			These limits are in the software. The system sends a saturation message when the scan is aborted.
- <u>_</u>	13 μm	This scans features that are 6.5 μ m up or down from the scan's starting point.	During a scan using this profile type, if the scan goes out of the $\pm 6.5 \ \mu m$ range and stay out of range for 50 data points, the scan is aborted.
			These limits are in the software. The system sends a saturation message when the scan is aborted.
- <u>1</u>	6.5 μm	This scans features that are 3.2 μ m up or down from the scan's starting point.	During a scan using this profile type, if the scan goes out of the $\pm 3.2 \ \mu m$ range and stay out of range for 50 data points, the scan is aborted.
			These limits are in the software. The system sends a saturation message when the scan is aborted.

Table 3.22 Profile Types

Profile Type	Range	Scan	Description
	131 μm 327 μm 1000 μm	131 μm scans features \approx 100 μm up from the scan's starting point. 327 μm scans features \approx 240 μm up from the scan's starting point. 1000 μm scans features \approx 750 μm up from the scan's starting point.	During a scan using this profile type, if the scan goes out of range and stays out of range for 50 data points, the scan is aborted. When operating in this range, the sensor arm containing the stylus is actually very near its physical capacity. When it goes out of range for 50 data points on a step up , the scan is aborted. If the scan continued to go further out of range, at some point the sensor could be damaged.
	131 μm 327 μm 1000 μm	131 μm scans features \approx 100 μm down from the scan's starting point.327 μm scans features \approx 240 μm down from the scan's starting point.1000 μm scans features \approx 750 μm down from the scan's starting point.	During a scan using this profile type, if the scan goes out of the range and stays out of range for 50 data points, the scan is aborted. When operating in this range, the sensor arm is actually very near its physical capacity. When it goes out of range for 50 data points on a step down , the scan is aborted. If the scan continued to go further out of range, the stylus would simply float out of contact with the sample.

Table 3.22 Profile Types (Continued)

Feature Detection (Only for 2D Scans)

Feature Detection is used to enable automatic detection of some common classes of profile features (see *Figure 3.47* and *Figure 3.48*). Feature detection facilitates measurement throughput and consistency. It also makes it possible to automatically and reliably set the position of the measurement and leveling cursors relative to the rising and falling edge of a step-like feature or the apex of an arc-like feature.

In conjunction with feature detection, both the location of the edge (or the apex of an arc) and the step width can be calculated and displayed in the Analysis window.

Accessing the Feature Detection parameters:

In the **Recipe Editor**, click on the **Feature Detection** button. (See *Figure 3.46*.) For information on how to display the **Recipe Editor**, see *Accessing the Scan Recipe Editor* on page 3-13.



Figure 3.46 Feature Detection - Recipe Editor

Feature

This parameter allows the user to choose between six different features that can be detected and identified during a scan.





Figure 3.48 Feature Detection Point Locations for Convex and Concave



Feature	Description
None	No feature detection is being used.
UpEdge	At the trailing edge of a feature rise, it is the point at which the trace begins the plateau. (See <i>Figure 3.47</i> .)
	NOTE : This point location can be modified by using Distance to Edge parameter in the General Parameters Window.
UpBase	At the trailing edge of a plateau, it is the point at which the trace begins to turn upward. (See <i>Figure 3.47</i> .)
DownEdge	At the trailing edge of a plateau, it is the point at which the trace begins to turn downward. (See <i>Figure 3.47</i> .)
DownBase	At the trailing edge of a feature decline, it is the point at which the trace begins the plateau. (See <i>Figure 3.47</i> .)
Convex	This is the point at the apex of a convex feature. (See <i>Figure 3.48</i> .)
Concave	This is the point at the apex of a concave feature. (See <i>Figure 3.48</i> .)

 Table 3.23
 Feature Detection Descriptions (See Figure 3.47 and Figure 3.48.)

Selecting a feature for detection:

- 1. Click on the menu arrow next to the variable box to display its menu.
- 2. Click on the desired feature to select it. If necessary, use the scroll bar to reveal other features. (See *Figure 3.49*.)

Figure 3.49	<u> Feature</u> -	Feature	Detection	- Recipe	Editor
-------------	-------------------	---------	-----------	----------	--------

ſ	- Feature Detection	1
	Feature:	
	Feature Number:	
	Slope Threshold : 10.00	
	Plateau Threshold : 10.00	
	Min. Plateau Width : 10.000	
	Apply Gaussian Noise Filter Before Detection	
	Filter Cutoff (µm):	

Feature Number

If there are multiple edges detected in the scan, **Feature Number** provides a way to select a specific edge for detection. (See *Figure 3.50*.)

Feature Detection allows the user to choose from six feature option (convex and concave not shown). Click on the menu arrow to display the menu. Click on the desired feature to choose it.

Changing the Feature Number:

Double-click in its variable box to highlight the current number and type in the new number. (Use a whole number. 1 is Default)

Figure 3.50 <u>Detection Variables</u> - Feature Detection - Recipe Editor

	- Feature Detection	
	Feature:	Up Edge 💌
	Feature Number:	1
	Slope Threshold :	10.00
er.	Plateau Threshold :	10.00
	Min. Plateau Width :	10.000
	🔲 Apply Gaussian No	oise Filter Before Detection
	Filter Cutoff (µm):	0.000

Detection parameters are changed by clicking in the appropriate variable box to highlight the current number. Then type in the new number.

Slope Threshold

This factor sets the value at which any rise or fall in a trace is considered to be a slope, not just part of the roughness or noise. This means that the **Slope Threshold** defines a point at which the system recognizes a trace line as following or preceding an *edge*, *convex* or *concave* point. (See *Figure 3.50*.)

Changing the Slope Threshold:

Double-click in its variable box to highlight the current number and type in the new number:

- Use values between 0 and 50.000
- Default is 10.000 for a step and 1.000 for an apex point. These values are sufficient for most scans above 200 Å in height.

L	
L	-
L	1
	<u></u>

NOTE: For very noisy scans where the system is having difficulty detecting the feature, decrease the Slope Threshold. A value as low as 5.00 can work well.

Plateau Threshold

This factor affects the precise horizontal location calculated for an edge or arc point. This parameter allows for the positional adjustment of the point to the left or right. (See *Figure 3.50*.)

Changing the Plateau Threshold:

Double-click in its variable box to highlight the current number and type in the new number:

- Use values between 0 and 50.000
- Default is 10.000 for a step and 0.000 for an apex point. These values are sufficient for most scans above 200 Å.



NOTE: When comparing data from scans of identical features, find a value that works and then use it consistently. Data is changed when differing **Plateau Threshold** numbers are used.

Min. Plateau Width

Minimum Plateau Width defines the minimum horizontal distance between rising and falling edges (or falling and rising edges). This is used in feature detection to identify true features.

Changing the Min. Plateau Width:

Double-click in its variable box to highlight the current number and type in the new number:

- Use values between 0.005 and 1000.00 µm (0.0002 to 39.3701 mil)
- Default is 10 μm.



NOTE: This is very dependent on which **Feature** is chosen for detection and which **Feature Number** is used.

Apply Gaussian Noise Filter Before Detection

This is only used to filter out unwanted noise so the feature detection can more easily detect designated features. (See *Figure 3.51*.) *It does not apply the result to scan data*. For use of the **Gaussian Filter** with scan data, see *Filters* on page 3-50.



A Step scan with noise, before applying the Gaussian Noise Filter.
 A Step scan with noise, after applying the Gaussian Noise Filter.

To activate this feature

Click in the empty check box to put a \checkmark in it. (See *Figure 3.52*.) Then set the **Filter Cutoff** (µm) size.



	– Feature Detection –		
	Feature:	Up Edge 💌	
	Feature Number:	1	
To activate the Gaussian Noise	Slope Threshold :	10.00	
Filter Before Detection feature,	Plateau Threshold :	10.00	
click in its check box. A check (\checkmark) indicates that it is chosen.	Min. Plateau Width :	10.000	
	🔽 Apply Gaussian No	ise Filter Before Detection	
	Filter Cutoff (µm):	0.45	

Filter Cutoff (µm)

This option is only activated when there is a check in the **Apply Gaussian Noise Filter Before Detection** check box. (See *Figure 3.52*.) The number to be entered is in microns. This determines the noise level that is filtered out.

For an in depth discussion on filters, see *Filters* on page 3-50.

Changing the Filter Cutoff

- 1. 1. Ensure that a Feature has been chosen.
- 2. 2. Click on the menu arrow to display its menu.
- 3. 3. Click on the desired cutoff filter setting.

NOTE: A Feature must be chosen in order for the Gaussian Filter to become active. If **None** is showing in the **Feature** variable box, the Gaussian option is grayed out. To activate it, select a feature.

The Filter Cutoff range is from 0.25 through 800 μ m. Only established variables can be chosen.

Figure 3.53 Filter Cutoff Menu

Step 1 In order for the Apply Gaussian Noise Filter Before	Feature Detection
Detection , a Feature must be chosen. The filter is not available	Feature: Up Edge
unless there is a feature chosen.	Feature Number: 1
	Slope Threshold : 10.00
	Plateau Threshold : 10,00
	Min. Plateau Width : 10.000
Step 2 After a Feature is chosen, —	Apply Gaussian Noise Filter Before Detection
put a check (\checkmark) in the check box by clicking in it.	Filter Cutoff (μm):
Step 3 Click on the menu arrow to display its menu. Click on the desired cutoff filter setting.	0.8 1.4 2.5 4.5 8 14

Filters and Cursors (Only for 2D Scans)

Filters

Two filters are available for removing noise from scan data, either as the scan is taking place, or after the scan occurs but before the data is saved. The oldest filter is the RC Filter. **RC** stands for Resister Capacitor Filter. The second, the **Gaussian Noise Filter**, is the best of the two and is generally chosen when a filter is required.

Click on the Filters/Cursors button to display the Filters/Cursors parameters.

Figure 3.54 Filters/Cursors Parameters - Recipe Editor

	🖼 Profiler - [Recipe Editor - 13X13]
The Filters/Cursors	Recipe Options Help
parameters window is	
displayed by clicking on the	Scan Parameter
Cursors/Filters button in the	Definition Filter Option: Gaussian Filter
Recipe Editor.	Feature Noise Filter (Short Wavelength Cutoff): 0.25µm
-	Fitters Ursors Waviness Filter Lursors Ursory Wavelength Cutoff: Off
	General Parameters X1 X2
	Roughness Left Measurement: 0.024 0.024
	Bearing Ratio Cutting Depth Right Measurement: 0.024 0.024
	High Spot Count Left Level: 0.024 0.024
	3D Cursors Right Level: 0.024 0.024
	Setun
	Analysis Tools
	Substr. Clear Status

Gaussian Filter

This option is used to filter noise out of a scan. Application of this filter can be made to the scan data as it is being generated (during the scan) or after the scan is complete but *before the data is saved*.



A Step scan with noise, before applying the Gaussian Noise Filter.
 A Step scan with noise, after applying the Gaussian Noise Filter.

The illustration in *Figure 3.55* shows the effect of applying the **Gaussian Noise Filter** to a scan. This filter can be set to filter out noise from 0.25 to 800 μ m, as is evident in the available wavelength values in the **Noise Filter** drop-down menu.

To select the Gaussian Filter: (See Figure 3.56.)

- 1. Click on the Filter Option menu arrow to display its menu.
- 2. Click on Gaussian Filter.

- Filters-		Two
Filter Option:	Gaussian Filter	use
riitei option.	(Gaussian Filter	nev
	RC Filter	Filt
Noise Filter (Short Wavelength Cutoff):	Default	des
		con
Waviness Filter	Off	wer
(Long Wavelength Cutołf):		pro
Noise Filter (Shott Wavelength Cutoff): Waviness Filter (Long Wavelength Cutoff):	RC Filter Default	Fil de col we pro

Figure 3.56 Filters Parameters - Filter Option Menu

Two Filter options are available for use in filtering out noise. The newest and best is the **Gaussian Filter**. The **RC Filter** might be desirable if scanned data is to be compared with older scans that were made on Tencor DOS based profilers using the **RC Filter**.

RC Filter

This is an older version noise filter. It was used with Tencor profilers before the Gaussian Noise Filter was introduced. If the scans performed using this recipe are going to be compared to scan performed by other *Tencor DOS based profilers* using the **RC Filter**, then the use of the **RC Filter** helps in scan to scan correlation.

Selecting the RC Filter: (See *Figure 3.56*.)

- 1. Click on the menu arrow next to the variable box to display its menu.
- 2. Click on RC Filter.

Noise Filter

The **Noise Filter** is a *Short Wavelength Cutoff* filter. This is an adjustable software filter used to reject short wavelength components of scan data. When used with the **Waviness Filter** (*Long Wavelength Cutoff*), it also isolates band passes for wavelengths. See *Setting the Short-Wave Filter Cutoff Values* on page 8-35 for more information about using the cutoff filters in surface analysis.

Selecting the Short Wavelength Cutoff: (See Figure 3.57.)

- 1. Click on the Noise Filter menu arrow to display its menu.
- 2. Click on the desired Shortwave Cutoff.



NOTE: The availability of cutoffs is dependent on the scan speed. A short wavelength cutoff cannot be entered if it is longer than the currently selected long wavelength cutoff, or shorter than the value of the analog cutoff.

Short wavelength cutoff \leq Long wavelength cutoff

Short wavelength cutoff \geq Analog cutoff



NOTE: For scan speeds greater than 5 μ m/s, the shortest short wavelength cutoff selection turns the short wavelength filter completely off. If subsequent changes to the scan speed or scan length cause the short wavelength cutoff setting to become invalid, the cutoff is automatically changed to the nearest available valid value (possibly the default).





Waviness Filter

The **Waviness Filter** is the *Long Wavelength Cutoff* filter. It is an adjustable software filter to separate long wavelength components of scan data. When used with the Short Wavelength Cutoff, it also isolates band passes for wavelengths.

Two types of Long Wavelength Cutoff filters are used:

- Gaussian, the best filter for use with Windows based systems.
- RC, used on older DOS based Tencor systems. Use this filter when comparing new data with data obtained using the RC filter on a DOS based system. This provides uniformity for comparison basis

To Select the Long Wavelength Cutoff: (See *Figure 3.58*.)

- 1. Click on the Waviness Filter menu arrow next to display its menu.
- 2. Click on the desired Long Wavelength Cutoff value.

*

NOTE: The availability of cutoffs is dependent on the scan speed. The systems prevents the accidental entry of a long wavelength cutoff that is shorter than the currently selected short wavelength cutoff or the value of the analog cutoff.

If subsequent changes to the scan speed or scan length cause the long wavelength cutoff setting to become invalid, the cutoff is automatically changed to the nearest available valid value.



Figure 3.58 Filters Parameters - Waviness Filter Menu

Cursors

Cursors are used for two general purposes:

- Measurement Cursors are used to gather data either between the two sets of cursors or within the boundaries of the cursor itself.
- Leveling Cursors are used to level the data points in the trace so the trace features fairly represent the actual scanned surface.



(Cursors (Left Measurement:	×1	×2	The limits of the cursor boundary are displayed in the X1 and X2 columns for the various cursors.
	Right Measurement:	0.024	0.024	
	Left Level:	0.024	0.024	
	Right Level:	0.024	0.024	Notice that the cursor parameters have not been set in the
	 Relative to Feat Fit and Level 	ure Detected		illustration. They are all at a single point on the trace.

Each cursor has limits that can be set. The limits of the cursor boundary are displayed in X1 and X2 in the **Cursors** parameters box. *The cursor limits are set relative to the starting point of the scan.* These values can be set in the window by clicking on the current value in the variable box and typing in the new value.

The easiest way is to set the cursors is in the analysis screen, after the scan, using the click and drag procedure. The procedure is described in the following discussion. (For more information on leveling cursors see *Leveling Cursors* on page 3-55.)

Cursor parameters can be changed using the screen variable boxes by clicking in the appropriate variable box to highlight the current number. Then type in the new number.



Figure 3.60 Analysis Screen with Trace in Need of Leveling

Leveling Cursors

In general, the most effective way to set the **Leveling Cursors** is in the **Analysis** screen by clicking and dragging them into position. When they are in position, use the CALC procedure (see Step 4 on page -58) to enter the new **Cursors** variables. By visually positioning the cursors, the leveling positions are correct for the actual scan.

Setting the Leveling Cursor positions:

- 1. After the scan is complete, the **Analysis** screen is displayed. Click on **LEVEL** to activate the Leveling Cursors. (See *Figure 3.61*.)
- 2. Reposition the leveling cursors using the following procedure.

Figure 3.61 Leveling Cursors

Step 1 To reposition cursors, click on the **LEVEL** button in the tool bar to activate the Leveling Cursors.

Step 2 When activated, click and hold in the gray area containing the cursor boundary box, an drag the cursors to the new position.



Notice the double arrow associates with the cursor that is active, the one that moves when drug.

a. Click on the **LEVEL** button in the tool bar. This activates the Leveling cursors. The active cursor header is displayed as a 3D rectangle. The cursor header being moved is indented while the other cursor is in relief. The Measurement cursor heads appear as 2D line boxes. (See *Figure 3.61*.)

b. As the track ball cursor approaches one of the active cursor heads, the cursor head changes appearance to indented and the track ball cursor appears as a double arrow as shown in *Figure 3.61*.

Click and hold on the cursor that is to be moved. Drag it to the desired position, using the track ball to move it. Release the mouse button when the cursor is in position.

- **3**. When the cursor is in position, set each cursor boundary using the following procedure:
 - a. Move the track ball cursor down into the black scan trace screen. The boundary that the arrow is pointing at is the one that is moves. (See *Figure 3.62.*)
 - b. Click and hold the mouse button while using the track ball to drag the boundary into position for leveling the scan. Release the mouse button when the boundary is correctly positioned.



NOTE: Both cursors should be positioned on the same X-plane. The cursor boundaries should be positioned on the same plain, avoiding noise peaks or valleys. This generally gives a flat scan trace.

- c. Repeat Step 1 and Step 3 for the remaining cursor.
- 4. Click on the **LEVEL** button to level the trace. (See *Figure 3.62*.) This cause the trace to be leveled and displays the trace with the Measurement Cursors active. (See *Figure 3.64* for a leveled trace.)





Step 4 After Leveling cursors have been set, click on **LEVEL** to level the trace.

Step 3 When the Leveling Cursor is placed in the general area that it is to be used, move the track ball cursor down into the black trace screen to position the cursor boundaries.

A single arrow points at the cursor boundary that is to be adjusted.

Click and hold the mouse button and use the track ball to move the cursor boundary into place.

Measurement Cursors

The Measurement cursors are used to measure various attributes of the scan. Some measurements are obtained between the cursors, while others are made within the boundary of a single cursor.

1. It is important to set the measurement cursors to accurately measure the desired feature. In Figure 3.63 the left cursor is set on the sample surface with the cursor borders positioned to measure a relatively flat trace segment. The right cursor is positioned to detect the height of the step being measured. (See Figure 3.63.)



Figure 3.63 Setting Measurement Cursors

a. Click on the NORM button in the tool bar. This activates the Measurement cursors. The Measurement cursor header appears as a 3D rectangles. The Leveling cursors appear as 2D line boxes. (See *Figure 3.64*.)



Analysis - [Scan Data: tsinerf X _ 🖪 × Help Window Step 1 The leveled trace appears Q Q DID LEVEL STATS CALC NORM WAY ROUGH FINE cipe: STGENERA. evel: Length: 1600.00 µm Speed: 100.00 µm/s Direction -> 1400.8 epeats: 1 orce: 0.2 mg 1200Å Left Right -181.1 7.502 56.02 -196.1 440.1 -72.52 551.7 800Å Move the cursor into the graph atta 432.1 ht: 1.7Å ht: 1146.6Å ht: 1145.0Å 1565489/ 1181.4Å 600Å 400Å 200Å -200,8 4008 .600A 640 800 Scep Leod 1440 320 1280 1600 Clear Status

with the Measurement Cursors active. If the Measurement Cursors are not active. click on the NORM button in the tool bar.

area and position it next to the cursor boundary that is to be moved. It appears as an arrow. b. As the track ball cursor approaches one of the active cursors, the cursor header changes to appear indented and the track ball cursor appears as a double arrow as shown in *Figure 3.61*.

Click and hold on the cursor that is to be moved. Drag it to the desired position using the track ball to move it. Release the mouse button when the cursor is in position.

- 2. When the cursor is in position, set each cursor boundary using the following procedure:
 - a. Move the track ball cursor down into the black scan trace screen. The boundary that the cursor arrow is pointing at is the one that moves. (See *Figure 3.64.*)
 - b. Click and hold the mouse button while using the track ball to drag the boundary into position for its intended measurement in the scan. Release the mouse button when the boundary is correctly positioned.
 - c. Repeat Step 1 and Step 3 for the remaining cursor.
 - d. Click on the **LEVEL** button to level the trace.
- 3. When the trace has been leveled and the Measurement cursors have been placed, click on **Operations** to display its menu.
- 4. When the trace has been leveled and the Measurement cursors have been placed, click on the **CALC** button to cause the system to recalculate the data with new cursor positions. The new positions are saved as part of the recipe. (See *Figure 3.65.*)



Figure 3.65 Analysis Screen CALC Button

The **Recalculation** process places the cursor **limits** in the **Cursors** window of the **Recipe Editor**. (See *Figure 3.66*.)



Cursor parameters (limits) are automatically changed when the **CALC** button is clicked in the **Analysis** screen (*before the data is saved*).

_	- Cursors	X1	X2	The
	Left Measurement:	10.000	50.000	are o
)	Right Measurement:	450.000	490.000	COIU
)	Left Level:	10.000	50.000	Whe
_	Right Level:	450.000	490.000	feat
	🔲 Relative to Featu	ure Detected 🗖		neg
	Fit and Level			pos

The limits of the cursor boundary are displayed in the X1 and X2 columns for the various cursors.

When this box is checked, the feature takes on the "0" position and the cursors are set with negative numbers to the left and positive to the right.

Relative to Feature Detected

When there is a check (\checkmark) in its checkbox, the cursor limits are set relative to the feature that is defined in the **Feature Detection** parameters window in the **Recipe Editor**. (See *Feature Detection (Only for 2D Scans)* on page 3-43.) The feature becomes the **0** point (the origin of the new coordinate system), with the points to the left being negative and those to the right being positive. (See *Figure 3.67.*)

The cursors are set in the same way described in Step 1 on page -55 through Step 3 on page -56. The system automatically places the measurement and leveling cursors relative to the actual feature instead of relative to the starting point of the scan.



NOTE: If **Relative to Feature Detected** is not checked, there should be no negative numbers in any cursor position because the start of the scan is the "0" point.



Figure 3.67 Measurement Cursors - Relative to Feature Detection

Fit and Level

This option is designed to remove a secondary curvature from the overall trace of a curved surface. Features should then appear relative to a flat surface.

Selecting the Fit and Level option

• Click in the empty check box to put a check (\checkmark) in it.

Figure 3.68 Cursor Parameters - Recipe Editor



Median Filter for 2D and 3D Data

This filter can be chosen as part of the recipe to help filter out spikes from environmental noise and particulate contamination. A median filter can be turned on before the scan, allowing the system to filter the data before the first viewing. It can also be used on saved data. With the data open in the Analysis screen, the saved data from single scans and sequences can be changed by opening the recipe used to create the scan from the Analysis screen, and changing the filter size in that recipe.

The median filter is used for both 2D and 3D data, with each type having its own menu of kernel sizes for the filters being applied to the data. When the filter is applied before the scan, the data is filtered and permanently changed.

The median filter works as a smoothing tool, taking out glitches and smoothing the trace surface in direct proportion to the size of the kernel. The median if found for the effected points in the kernel and is applied to data. The larger the kernel, the greater the smoothing effect on the data. In general, the smaller the kernel (i.e., the 1 x 3 for 2D and the 3×3 for 3D), the less the data is manipulated.



Figure 3.69 Median Filter Application in Glitch Removal

1 x 7 point median filter before and after application AFTER APPLICATION

The median filter is a major component of the Glitch Removal process used on data in the Analysis screen for both 2D and 3D data. (See 2D Glitch Removal on page 8-40, and Activate 3D Glitch Removal Tool. on page 9-17.)

The available filter sizes (kernels) for 2D data are: 1 x 3, 1 x 5, and 1 x 7 points.

Set or Change Median

Filters for Saved Data

The available filter sizes (kernels) for 3D data are: 3 x 3, 5 x 5, and 7 x 7 points.

To add a filter or change the filter size on existing data, use the following procedure:

- 1. From the Catalog Screen, with either the Scan Data or Sequence Data catalog open, open the data set by double-clicking on it. The Analysis screen opens.
- 2. From the Analysis screen, click on **Edit** to display its menu.
- 3. Select Recipe. This opens the recipe used to generate the data.
- 4. Click on Filters/Cursors to display the Filters and Cursors parameters.
- 5. Click on the menu-arrow for either the 2D or 3D Median Filter to display the options. (See Sc*Figure 3.70.*)
- 6. Choose the required filter size for the 2D or 3D data.





7. Click on the Analysis screen icon in the tool bar to return to the Analysis screen for the affected data.

Setting Median Filter Prior to a Scan or Sequence To set the **median filter** for 2D or 3D scans, either single scan or for use in a sequence, prior to using the recipe, choose the required median filter while setting the other recipe parameters. If the recipe is already a part of a sequence, the recipe can also be opened from the sequence and the median filter added or changed prior to running the sequence.

For additional use of the median filter see 2D Glitch Removal on page 8-40, and Activate 3D Glitch Removal Tool. on page 9-17.

Unit Output

Unit Output is designed to give the user an opportunity to determine units of output for the parameters calculated and to set automatic crossover values for unit changes. The options here let the user choose the units for the 2D graphical display through the recipe that is used to generate the scan. This option does not change the internal representation of data or the statistical parameters which continues to be in Angstroms. 1. Click on **Unit Output** in the Recipe screen window buttons to open the Unit Output parameters dialog box. (See *Figure 3.71*.) This dialog box is where units are chosen for statistical data and graphic presentation.

	Profiler - (Recipe EditorOFF150)	cal X
	Becipe Options Sample Yacuum Help	
Click on Unit Output to open its dialog box.	Scan Parameter Scan Size (m) Scan Size (m) Scan Size (m) Feature O Sample Conver C Sample Scan Size (m) Feature Detection Scan Size (m) Scan Size (m) Scan Size (m) Feature Detection Scan Size (m) C Sample Scan Size (m) Scan Size (m) Unit Output Scan Size (m) Scan Size (m) C Sample Scan Size (m) Scan Size (m) Beaving Rate Fig Scan Detector C m only mode Fig C m only mode Beaving Rate Scan Tace (n) C m only mode Appent Tace (n) Appent Tace (n) Appent Tace (n) Appent Tace (n) Status Scan Tace (n) C m only mode Convert at Mode Cossover at MODE A Appent Tace (n) Status Status Status C mode Cossover at MODE A Mode Cossover at MODE A Mode Cossover at MODE A Status Status Status C mode Cossover at MODE A Mode Cossover at MODE A Mode Cossover at MODE A Status Status Status C mode Cossover at MODE A Mode Cossover at MODE A Mode Cossover at MODE A Status Statu	
	Clear Status Cattern D	
	Enply? Clear	Status

Figure 3.71 Recipe Screen with Unit Output Dialog Box

- 2. Choose the desired units for statistical data reporting and graphic presentation by clicking to place a dot in the radio button. (See *Figure 3.72*.)
- **3**. If one of the bottom two choices are made, the crossover value must be entered in the variable field. (See *Figure 3.72*.)

	Select Unit Output Option for Parameters and Data Display	
Choose the desired unit of output for graphics and calculated parameters. Make sure to enter the crossover values if either	C μm only mode C nm only mode C Å only mode C μm and Å mode crossover at: 10000 Å	
of the late two options are chosen.	C µm and nm mode crossover at: 1000 nm	To accept changes, click OK . To reject changes and retain current values, click Cancel .

Figure 3.72 Unit Output Dialog Box

4. Click **OK** when all changes are complete, to accept the new values.

General Parameters

The **General Parameters** window contains a variety of surface analysis calculations which are performed on the scan data when the options are chosen before the scan, or if they are applied to the scan data after the original data has been saved.

For each surface analysis option chosen, a post scan calculation is performed and displayed on the Analysis screen.





To access the **General Parameters** window, click on the **General Parameters** button in the **Recipe Editor** screen. (See *Figure 3.73.*)

2D General Parameters (Normal Trace)

These parameters represent calculations that are performed using the data from a scan. If the options are chosen before the scan is performed, and are part of the *scan recipe*, the calculations are automatically performed by the software and displayed in the Analysis screen upon completion of the scan. Parameters from the 2D General Parameters are for single trace analysis, and as such, are not available for 3D scan data analysis. (See *Analyzing 2D Scan Data* on page 8-1.)

Each parameter is discussed below. (See *Figure 3.73.*)

Figure 3.74 2D General Parameters



Adding 2D General Parameters to the Analysis

- In the 2D General Parameters options box, click in the checkbox of any option (see *Figure 3.79*) to include them in the current recipe and display each data value in the Analysis screen. A check (✓) in the checkbox activates the parameter.
- Add all the 2D General Parameters to the Analysis by clicking Select All 2D at the bottom of the list. This puts a check (✓) in the checkbox of all parameters.
- Remove all checked parameters from the **2D General Parameters** by clicking **Remove All 2D** at the bottom of the list. This removes all checks from any chosen parameters

Parameter	Description	
Step Height (StpHt)	The difference in height between the left and right measurement cursors positions. Each cursor position is an average of the area between the cursor boundaries. The difference is between these averages.	
Total Indicator Runout (TIR)	The difference between the highest and lowest points in the scan.	
Average Height (Ave)	The average height of all data points between the measurement cursors relative to the leveled baseline. (ANSI)	
Slope	The ratio of the difference in vertical positions to the difference in horizontal positions of the measurement cursors. The slope is reported as an angle in degrees.	
	NOTE: The position of each cursor is taken to be the horizontal midpoint of each delta cursor band, and the data value at this location is the average of the vertical values within these bands. (ANSI)	
Radius	The distance from the center of curvature of the profile arc (assuming a circular profile within the sampling length) to the profile. The measurement cursors define two points of a circular arc. A <i>least squares</i> calculation is performed on the points between the cursors. The normal trace should not be leveled unless definite level reference points exist.	
Area of Peaks (Area+)	The total area bounded by the leveled baseline and the profile where it rises <i>above</i> the baseline. (ANSI)	
Area of Valleys (Area-)	The total area bounded by the leveled baseline and the profile where it descends <i>below</i> the baseline. (ANSI)	
Total Area (Area)	The sum of Area of Peaks and Area of Valleys . The delta cursors are not used. (ANSI)	

Table 3.242D General Parameters

Parameter	Description	
Peak (Pp)	Maximum Z value, measured relative to the leveled reference line, between the left and right measurement cursors.	
Valley (Pv)	Minimum Z value, measured relative to the leveled reference line, between the left and right measurement cursors.	
Profile Length (ProfL)	The length that would be obtained from drawing out the profile in a straight line. (ANSI)	
Distance to Edge (Edge)	 a straight line. (ANSI) Depending on the parameters settings in Feature Detection, this distance is either: The distance between the beginning of the scan and the first rising or falling edge of a profile feature; or The distance between the beginning of the scan and the first concave or convex arc of a profile feature. NOTE: This parameter is independent of the cursor positions. It is based on the feature detection parameters 	
Step Width (StpWt)	The distance between the first rising edge of an upward step and the falling edge that follows, or the first falling edge of a downward step and the rising edge that follows. This value is meaningless for a convex or concave arc.	

 Table 3.24
 2D General Parameters (Continued)

3D General Parameters

These parameters represent calculations that are performed using the data from a scan. Only three General Parameters exist for 3D scans. (See *Figure 3.75*.) If the options are chosen before the scan is performed, and are part of the *scan recipe*, the calculations are automatically performed by the software and displayed in the Analysis screen upon completion of the scan. Parameters from the 2D General Parameters are for single trace analysis and as such are not available for 3D scan data analysis. The options can be applied to live or saved data.

Each parameter option can be calculated in two different ways:

- **Full Scale:** With this checkbox selected, the parameter are calculated using data from the entire scan.
- **Boxed:** With this checkbox selected, the parameter are calculated using data from within the box that is defined in the 3D Cursors parameters window of the Recipe Editor. (See *Figure 3.73.*)

Either one or both calculation options can be used. If both are used, two sets of calculations are performed and presented in the Analysis screen.

Each parameter is discussed below. Figure 3.75 3D General Parameters 3D General Parameters Full Boxed Scale Total Ind. Runout (TIR3D) □ SlopeX To select a parameter for ☐ SlopeY inclusion in the Analysis, click П 🔲 Peak 3D (Sp) Full Scale for data from entire Π □ Valley 3D (Sv) scan or **Boxed** for only data from enclosed cursors, or both can be chosen. To select all the parameters for inclusion in the Analysis, click Select All 3D. To remove all selected parameters from inclusion in the Analysis, click Select All 3D Remove All 3D. Remove All 3D

Adding 3D General Parameters to the Analysis

- In the 3D General Parameters options box, click in the checkbox of any option (see *Figure 3.75*) to include them in the current recipe and display each data value in the Analysis screen. A check (✓) in the checkbox activates the parameter.
- Add all the 3D General Parameters to the Analysis by clicking Select All 3D at the bottom of the list. This puts a check (✓) in the checkbox of all parameters. (See *Figure 3.75*)
- Remove all checked parameters from the **3D General Parameters** by clicking **Remove All 3D** at the bottom of the list. This removes all checks from any chosen parameters. (See *Figure 3.75*)

Parameter	Description
Total Ind. Runout (TIR3D)	This is the 3D Total Indicator Runout. TIR3D is the difference between the highest and lowest points in the scan.
SlopeX	SlopeX refers to the slopes for lines in the plane: The SlopeX is the slope along the X-direction For the data set in any rectangular area (either a box or the entire area), a plane can be established using the <i>least squares</i>
e :	
SlopeY	SlopeY refers to the slopes for lines in the plane:
	The SlopeY is the slope along the Y-direction
	For the data set in any rectangular area (either a box or the entire area), a plane can be established using the <i>least squares</i> method.
Peak 3D (Sp)	Maximum Z value, measured relative to the leveled reference plane.
Valley 3D (Sv)	Minimum Z value, measured relative to the leveled reference plane.

 Table 3.25
 3D General Parameters

Roughness and Waviness Parameters

Introduction

Roughness and Waviness are defined by the Long Wavelength Cutoff setting. In general, when a long wavelength cutoff is set, the wavelengths greater than the cutoff are defined as **Roughness** and those less than the cutoff are defined as **Waviness**. (See *Figure 3.76.*) The long wavelength cutoff setting is generally determined by the specific application for which it is to be used.

A filter is used to remove aspects of the data so other aspects can be more carefully analyzed. As an example, the roughness could be filtered out so the waviness could be better analyzed. (See *Figure 3.77.*)

For applications where the user is unsure of a specific long wavelength cutoff, use the general rule of 1/5 the scan length. This means that for a scan of 50 μ m, the cutoff would be 10 μ m.



Figure 3.76 Waviness vs. Roughness





Figure 3.78 shows the Recipe Editor with the Roughness and Waviness parameters in the Information Display window.



Figure 3.78 Recipe Editor Showing 2D and 3D Roughness/Waviness Parameters

2D Roughness Parameters





Each of the roughness parameters available in the **2D Roughness Parameters** option box are described in *Table 3.26 on page 3-74*. (For more information Roughness, see the *Introduction* to *Roughness and Waviness Parameters on page 3-70*.)

Adding 2D Roughness Parameters to the Analysis

- In the 2D Roughness Parameters options box, click in the checkbox of any option (see *Figure 3.79*) to include them in the current recipe and display each data value in the Analysis screen. A check (✓) in the checkbox activates the parameter.
- Add all the 2D Roughness Parameters to the Analysis by clicking Select All Roughness at the bottom of the list. This puts a check (✓) in the checkbox of all parameters.
- Remove all checked parameters from the **2D Roughness Parameters** by clicking **Remove All Roughness** at the bottom of the list. This removes all checks from any chosen parameters.

2D Roughness Parameters Table

Table 3.26 2D Roughness Parameters

Parameter	Description
Average (R _a)	This is the arithmetic average deviation of the absolute values of the roughness profile from the mean line or centerline. Also known as <i>centerline average roughness</i> . The centerline divides profiles such that all areas above it are equal to all areas below it. (ANSI)
Maximum R_a (Max R_a)	The trace within the cursors is divided into nineteen overlapping sections. Each section is one-tenth of the sampling length. The R_a of each section is calculated, and the maximum is displayed. (ANSI)
RMS (R _q)	The Root-Mean-Square (RMS) or geometric average deviation of the roughness profile from the mean line measured in the sampling length. (ANSI)
Peak (R _p)	The distance between the mean line and the highest peak within the sampling length. (ANSI)
Valley (R _v)	The distance between the mean line and the lowest valley within the sampling length. (ANSI)
Peak/Valley (R _t)	The vertical distance between the highest peak and the lowest valley in the sampling length leveled on the mean line. (Also known as R_{max} , R_y , Maximum Peak-to-Valley Roughness.) (ANSI)
Height 10pt (R _z)	The average height difference between the five highest peaks and the five deepest valleys within the cursors measured from a line parallel to the mean line. (ANSI)
Height 6pt (R _{3z})	The average height difference between the three highest peaks and the three deepest valleys in the sampling length measured from a line parallel to the mean line and not crossing the profile. (ANSI)
Parameter	Description
-------------------------------	--
Roughness Height (R_h)	The difference in height in the roughness profile between the left and right cursor positions. Analogous to the Height data that always appears in the Summary box of the Analysis window. (ANSI)
Mean Peak Height (R_{pm})	The mean value of the local peak heights relative to the mean line of the roughness trace within the sampling length.
RMS Slope (D_q)	The root mean square (RMS) value of the roughness trace slope. The Delta cursors are not used.
RMS Wavelength (L_q)	2π times the ratio of the root mean square (RMS) deviation of the profile (R _q) to the root mean square slope of the profile (D _q). L _q is a measure of the spacing of local peaks and local valleys, taking into account their relative amplitudes and individual spatial frequencies. (ISO International Standards Organization)
Std. Dev. Height (SD)	The standard deviation of the local peak heights about the mean peak height relative to the mean line within the sampling length.

Table 3.26 2D Roughness Parameters (Continued)

2D Waviness Parameters

Figure 3.80 2D Waviness Parameters



Each of the waviness parameters available in the 2D Waviness Parameters option box

is described in *Table 3.27 on page 3-76*. (For more information Waviness, see the *Introduction* to *Roughness and Waviness Parameters on page 3-70*.)

Adding 2D Waviness Parameters to the Analysis

- In the 2D Waviness Parameters options box, click in the checkbox of any option (see *Figure 3.80*) to include them in the current recipe and display each data value in the Analysis screen. A check (✓) in the checkbox activates the parameter.
- Add all the 2D Waviness Parameters to the Analysis by clicking Select All Waviness at the bottom of the list. This puts a check (✓) in the checkbox of all parameters.
- Remove all checked parameters from the **2D Waviness Parameters** by clicking **Remove All Waviness** at the bottom of the list. This removes all checks from any chosen parameters.

2D Waviness Parameters Description

Table 3.27 2D Waviness Parameters

Parameter	Description
Average (W _a)	This is the arithmetic average deviation of the absolute values of the waviness profile from the mean line or centerline also known as centerline average waviness). The centerline divides profiles such that all areas above it are equal to all areas below it. (ANSI)
RMS (W _q)	The Root-Mean-Square (RMS) or geometric average deviation of the waviness profile from the mean line measured in the sampling length. (ANSI)
Peak (W _p)	The distance between the mean line and the highest peak within the sampling length. (ANSI)
Valley (W_v)	The distance between the mean line and the lowest valley within the sampling length. (ANSI)
Peak/Valley (W _t)	The vertical distance between the highest peak and the lowest valley in the sampling length leveled on the mean line. Also known as W_{max} , W_y , Maximum Peak-To-Valley Waviness. (ANSI)
Waviness Height (W_h)	The difference in height in the waviness profile between the left and right cursor positions. Analogous to the Height data that always appears in the Summary box of the Analysis window. (ANSI)

3D Roughness Parameters

Each of the roughness parameters available in the 3D Roughness Parameters option box is described in *Table 3.28 on page 3-78*. (For more information Roughness, see the *Introduction* to *Roughness and Waviness Parameters* on page 3-70.) chosen. To have the

 (\checkmark) in it and activate it.

click Select All 3D.

Add 3D Roughness Parameters to Analysis

- In the **3D Roughness Parameters** options box, click in the checkbox of any option (see *Figure 3.81*) to include them in the current recipe and display each data value in the Analysis screen. A check (\checkmark) in the checkbox activates the parameter.
- Add all the **3D Roughness Parameters** to the Analysis by clicking **Select All 3D** at the bottom of the list. This puts a check (\checkmark) in the checkbox of all parameters.
- Remove all checked parameters from the **3D Roughness Parameters** by clicking Remove All 3D at the bottom of the list. This removes all checks from any chosen parameters.



Figure 3.81 3D Roughness Parameters

corresponding to each parameter is displayed in the Analysis screen. Although these parameters can be applied to a scan after it is complete and before the data is

saved, if the parameters are chosen as part of the recipe being used to perform the scan, they are automatically included and can be accessed any time in the future.

To remove all selected parameters from inclusion in the Analysis, click Remove All 3D.

Each parameter option can be calculated in two different ways:

- Full Scale: With this checkbox selected, the parameter are calculated using data from the entire scan.
- Boxed: With this checkbox selected, the parameter are calculated using data from within the box that is defined in the 3D Cursors parameters window in the Recipe Editor. (See *Figure 3.73*.)

Parameter	Description
RMS Deviation (S_q)	Root-Mean-Square Deviation of the Surface. The root-mean-square value of the surface departures within the sampling area.
Arithmetic Mean Deviation (S _a)	Arithmetic Mean Deviation of the Surface. The arithmetic mean of the absolute values of the surface departures above and below the mean plane within the sampling area.
Skewness (S_{sk})	The measure of asymmetry of surface deviations about the mean plane. It effectively describes the shape of the surface height distribution.
Kurtosis (S _{ku})	A measure of the peakedness or sharpness of the surface height distribution. It characterizes the spread of the height distribution.
RMS Slope $(S_{delta q})$	The root-mean-square value of the surface slope within the sampling area. RMS slope is sensitive to sampling rate.
Ten Point Height (S_z)	The average value of the absolute heights of the five highest peaks and the depths of the five deepest pits or valleys within the sampling area.
Density of Summit (S_{ds})	The number of summits of a unit sampling area.
Interfacial Area Ratio (S _{dr})	The ratio of the increment of the interfacial area of a surface over the sampling area. The Interfacial Area Ratio reflects the hybrid property of surface.

Table 3.283D Roughness Parameters

Bearing Ratio and Cutting Depth

Access the Bearing Ratio and Cutting Depth Information Display window by clicking the Bearing Ration/Cutting Depth button in the Recipe Editor. (See *Figure 3.82*.)

Figure 3.82 Bearing Ration and Cutting Depth Parameters

	🐺 Profiler - [Recipe Ed	litor - 13X13]				
	<u>Recipe</u> Options Help					
To display the Bearing Ration and Cutting Depth parameters, click on the Bearing Ratio/Cutting Depth button.	Scan Parameter Definition Feature Detection Filters Cursors General Parameters Roughness Waviness Waviness Waviness Bearing Ratio Cutting Depth High Spot Count Peak Count Beat Count Setup Analysis Tools	2D Bearing Ratio (tp) 3D Bearing Ratio (Sb) Depth Units Scale Boxed Depth Units Depth Depth Depth Depth Units Depth Depth Depth Units Depth Depth Depth Poil Dephh				
		Substr Clear Status				

Bearing Ratio (t_p)

Bearing Ratio is also know as Bearing Length Ratio (t_p) . ANSI defines it as:

Bearing Length Ratio (t_p) and Others. A reference line is drawn parallel to the mean line and at a preselected or predetermined distance from it to intersect the profile in one or more subtended lengths. The bearing length ratio is the ratio of the sum of these subtended lengths to the length of the mean line.

Figure 3.83 Bearing Ratio



The Bearing Ratio is determined according to the following formula:

$$t_p = \frac{S1+S2}{L}$$

The **bearing length** is the sum of the subtended lengths (S1 and S2 in *Figure 3.83*). The **bearing ratio** is the ratio of the bearing length to the sampling length (L in *Figure 3.83*) as shown in the above formula.

Setting the 2D Bearing Ratio

Use the following procedure to set the 2D Bearing Ratio variables.

 The option exists to create three 2D bearing ratio parameters. Click in up to three empty checkboxes to put a check (✓) in them and activate their variable boxes. (See *Figure 3.84*.)

Figure 3.84 2D Bearing Ratio



- 2. The depth is set down from the highest peak in the scan. It can be set in either microns (µm) or angstroms (Å). Determine which units are going to be used and, if a change is necessary, click on the menu arrow under units to display its menu.
- 3. Click on the desired unit signifier, $\mu \mathbf{m}$ or \mathbf{A} .
- 4. **Depth** is the distance down from the top of the highest point in the scan. To set or change the **Depth**, double-click on the current **Depth** variable and type in the new depth. (See *Figure 3.85*.)



Figure 3.85 Depth

2D Cutting Depth (CutDp)

Cutting Depth is related to Bearing Ratio in that Bearing Ratio uses an operator set depth from the top peak in the scan, adding up the points between the top peak and the set depth, while **Cutting Depth** uses an operator set *ratio of data points* in the scan that are below the highest peak in the scan, causing the system to determine the depth. (See the definition of **Bearing Length Ratio** in *Bearing Ratio* (*tp*) on page 3-79.)





Use the following procedure to set the 2D Cutting Depth variables.

- The option exists to create three 2D cutting depth parameters. Click in up to three empty checkboxes to put a check (✓) in them and activate their variable boxes. (See *Figure 3.86*.)
- 2. The Cutting Depth is a ratio of points below the highest peak in the scan. The operator chooses the ratio and the software automatically takes the that ratio of data points in the scan that are the closest to the highest peak and calculates the Cutting Depth (CutDp) variable, displaying the results in the Analysis screen.

EXAMPLE:

If the user want to calculate a set of parameters comparing 20%, 30%, and 40% cutting depth, all three check boxes are checked and the respective variable boxes have: **0.20**, **0.30**, and **0.40** in them.

To set or change one or more of the Cutting Depth variables, double-click on the number in the variable field so that it highlights, and type in the new ratio. (See *Figure 3.86*.)

Figure 3.87 Cutting Depth



3D Bearing Ratio (Sbi)

The 3D Bearing Ratio is a 3D version of the 2D Bearing Ratio in that it uses a distance down from the highest point in the scan to compute a bearing ratio with respect to a plane instead of area with respect to a single line trace.

In addition, two options are available for each of three parameter settings for calculating the 3D Bearing Ratio. The scope of the calculation is set by clicking in *one or both* of the range boxes: **Full Scale** and **Boxed**. The depth can then be set.

Full Scale - This option performs a calculation of the 3D Bearing Ratio over the entire scan.

Boxed - This option performs a calculation of the 3D Bearing Ratio over the portion of the scan within the box that is defined in the 3D cursors parameters window. (See *Figure 3.88*.)

Use the following procedure to set the 3D Bearing Ratio variables.

1. To chose the scope of the 3D Bearing Ratio calculation, click in the empty checkbox to activate the variable field and place it in the recipe. **Either or both** options can be chosen.

Choose up to three sets of calculations with different depths. If all boxes are checked, two calculations are performed for each of the three variable depths.

Figure 3.88 3D Bearing Ratio (Sbi)



- The depth is set down from the highest peak in the scan. It can be set in either microns (μm) or angstroms (Å). Determine which units are going to be used and, if a change is necessary, click on the menu arrow under units to display its menu.
- 3. Click on the desired unit signifier, $\mu \mathbf{m}$ or \mathbf{A} .
- 4. The **Depth** is the distance down from the top of the highest point in the scan. To set or change the **Depth**, double-click on the current **Depth** variable and type in the new depth.

3D Material Volume (Vm)

The 3D Material Volume is a 3D version of the 2D Cutting Depth Ratio. It is set by using a ratio (percentage) of the overall data points below the highest peak in the scan to compute a material volume (Vm) with respect to a plane instead of area with respect to a single line trace.

Step 1 The 3D Bearing Ratio variables become active when there is a check in one or both of the calculation scope check boxes. If both are checked, two calculations are made for each established depth. In addition, two options are available for each of three parameter settings for calculating the 3D Material Volume. The scope of the calculation is set by clicking in *one or both* of the range boxes: **Full Scale** and **Boxed**. The depth can then be set.

Full Scale - This option performs a calculation of the 3D Bearing Ratio over the entire scan.

Boxed - This option performs a calculation of the 3D Bearing Ratio over the portion of the scan within the box that is defined in the 3D cursors parameters window. (See *Figure 3.89*)

Use the following procedure to set the 3D Material Volume variables.

1. To choose the scope of the 3D Material Volume calculation, click in the empty checkbox to activate the variable field and place it in the recipe. **Either or both** options can be chosen.

Choose up to three sets of calculations with different depths. If all boxes are checked, two calculations are performed for each of the three variable depths.





- The depth is set down from the highest peak in the scan. It can be set in either microns (μm) or angstroms (Å). Determine which units are going to be used and, if a change is necessary, click on the menu arrow under units to display its menu.
- 3. Click on the desired unit signifier, $\mu \mathbf{m}$ or \mathbf{A} .
- 4. The **Depth** is the distance down from the top of the highest point in the scan. To set or change the **Depth**, double-click on the current **Depth** variable and type in the new depth.

High Spot Count and Peak Count

Access the High Spot Count and Peak Count Display Window by clicking the **High Spot Count/Peak Count** button in the Recipe Editor. (See *Figure 3.90*.)

To display the High Spot Count and Peak Count parameters, click on the High Spot Count/Peak Count button.	Profiler - [Recipe Edf Recipe Qptions Help Scan Parameter Definition Feature Definition Filters Cursors General Parameters Roughness Waviness Bearing Ratio Cutting Ratio Cutting Ratio	tor - 13×13) 2 20 12 20 High Spot Count (HSC) - 20 Mean Spacing Sm(1/HSC) Height Units IV 1 IV </th
	Luting Depth High Spot Count Peak Count 3D Cursors Setup Analysis Tools	

Figure 3.90 Bearing Ratio and Cutting Depth Parameters

High Spot Count (HSC)

High Spot Count is the number of profile peaks per unit of length projecting through a reference line parallel to and at a given height above, a line drawn parallel to the mean line through the lowest point of the roughness trace. (See *Figure 3.91*).

The mean line is the line at the mean height of all data. Another line is drawn through the lowest point in the trace, parallel to the mean line. The reference line is at a user specified height above the lowest point line. Projecting through means that the profile curve first climbs above the reference line and then falls below it. Thus, if the profile rises above the reference line, descends without falling below it, then rises again, multiple peaks are not identified.



Use the following procedure to set the 2D High Spot Count variables.

 The option exists to create three 2D High Spot Count parameters. Click in up to three empty checkboxes to put a check (✓) in them and activate their variable boxes. (See *Figure 3.92*.)

Figure 3.92 2D High Spot Count (HSC)



- The height can be set in either microns (μm) or angstroms (Å). Determine which units are going to be used and, if a change is necessary, click on the menu arrow under units to display its menu.
- 3. Click on the desired unit signifier, $\mu \mathbf{m}$ or \mathbf{A} .
- 4. The Height is the distance up from the lowest point of the roughness trace.

To set or change the Height, double-click on the current **Height** variable and type in the new height. (See *Figure 3.92*.)

2D Mean Spacing Sm (1/HSC)

Mean Peak spacing is the mean value of the local peak spacing of the profile within the sampling length. The peaks for High Spot Count are defined by the Height parameter from the High Spot Count window. *Spacing* is the inverse of the count.

It is important to note that the 2D High Spot Count (HSC) and the 2D Mean Spacing Sm (1/HSC) are related. If running a scan in which these values are to be compared, the *height* of both must be identical for the data to have direct correlation.

Use the following procedure to set the 2D Mean Spacing Sm variables.

 The option exists to create three 2D Mean Spacing Sm parameters. Click in up to three empty checkboxes to put a check (✓) in them and activate their variable boxes. (See *Figure 3.93*.)





- The height can be set in either microns (μm) or angstroms (Å). Determine which units are going to be used and, if a change is necessary, click on the menu arrow under units to display its menu.
- 3. Click on the desired unit signifier, μm or A.
- 4. The **Height** is the distance **up** from the lowest point of the roughness trace. In most scans, this value is compared to High Spot Count (HSC) so this height must be identical to the **Height** in **High Spot Count (HSC)**.

To set or change the Height, double-click on the current **Height** variable and type in the new height. (See *Figure 3.93*.)

2D Peak Count (PC)

Peak Count is the number of peak and valley pairs per unit length projecting through a band of width **b** centered about the mean line. (See *Figure 3.94*.)

The Mean line is the line at the mean height of all data. The band is the area bounded by two lines running parallel to the mean line, at an equal distance from the mean line.

Figure 3.94 Peak Count



Use the following procedure to set the 2D Peak Count variables.

The option exists to create three 2D Peak Count bandwidth settings. Click in up to three empty checkboxes to put a check (✓) in them and activate their variable boxes. (See *Figure 3.95.*)

Figure 3.95 2D Peak Count (PC)



- 2. The bandwidth can be set in either microns (μm) or angstroms (Å). Determine which units are going to be used and, if a change is necessary, click on the menu arrow under units to display its menu.
- 3. Click on the desired unit signifier, $\mu \mathbf{m}$ or \mathbf{A} .
- 4. The Band is the bandwidth surrounding the mean line. (See Figure 3.94.)

To set or change the Band, double-click on the current Band variable and type in the new bandwidth. (See *Figure 3.95*.)

2D Mean Spacing Sm (1/PC)

Mean Peak spacing is the mean value of the local peak spacing of the profile within the sampling length. The peaks for Peak Count are defined by the **Band** (bandwidth) parameter from the Peak Count (PC) window. *Spacing* is the inverse of the count. (See *Figure 3.94*.)

It is important to note that the **2D Peak Count (PC)** and the **2D Mean Spacing Sm (1/PC)** are related. If running a scan in which these values are to be compared, the *bandwidth* **of both must be identical** for the data to have direct correlation.

Use the following procedure to set the 2D Mean Spacing Sm

 The option exists to create three 2D High Spot Count parameters. Click in up to three empty checkboxes to put a check (✓) in them and activate their variable boxes. (See *Figure 3.96*.)





- 2. The bandwidth can be set in either microns (μm) or angstroms (Å). Determine which units are going to be used and, if a change is necessary, click on the menu arrow under units to display its menu.
- 3. Click on the desired unit signifier, $\mu \mathbf{m}$ or \mathbf{A} .
- The Band is the bandwidth bordered equidistant above and below the mean line of the scan. In most scans, this value is compared to Peak Count (PC) so this Band (bandwidth) must be identical to the Band in Peak Count (PC).

To set or change the Band, double-click on the current Band variable and type in the new bandwidth. (See *Figure 3.96*.)

3D Cursors Parameters

Introduction

The 3D Cursors screen is designed to allow the user to view the cursor coordinates, and manipulate the cursor position and boundaries by coordinate. (See *Figure 3.97*.) Those who frequently use 3D cursors have found it more accurate to drag and drop the cursor boundaries rather than attempt to pin point them using the 3D Cursors window.

If necessary, it is possible to drag the cursor boundaries and then go into the 3D Cursors screen and fine tune the boundary settings. Fine tuning is, however, seldom done. In general, the 3D Cursors screen is only used as a reference screen.

X Start Level

This option is used to level the 3D scan with respect to the X starting position of the
scan. It assumes that the entire X=0 length of the scan is on the same plane, having no
holes or steps. If this box is checked, the other options are not used in the leveling
process. This option only levels in one direction, with respect to the X=0 plane.Initializing X Start LevelTo activate the X Start Level option, click in the empty checkbox next to X Start Level.
(See Figure 3.97.)

Leveling Criteria The 3D scan progresses with each initial trace data point being used for the scan leveling in the Y direction (using the X=0 point of each scan trace).



Figure 3.97 Recipe Editor - Choosing 3D Cursors

3D Leveling Cursor (µm)

The 3D Leveling Cursor field presents the option to define the three boxes that are used in the three-point leveling procedure. (See *Figure 3.98*.) This option is used by the system for leveling if neither the **X Start Level** nor the **Auto Level** checkboxes are checked. Each horizontal row of coordinates, called a vertex (after the old single point procedure that was used in the past), actually defines a box surrounding a set of data points. To be accurately used in the data leveling procedure, each box must contain only data points on the same plane. All three boxes must be located on the same plane to accurately level the data.

Setting the Cursors: Click-and-Drag

Click-and-Drag Cursor Positioning If the tool bar's **Activate Leveling Tool** button icon \checkmark was used to place the leveling cursors on the scan image, then it is possible to click-and-drag the boxes to the best positions for leveling purposes. After being positioned, they can be sized to include only the proper data. It is essential that each box contain data from only one plane, no steps or holes. All three boxes must contain data from the same plane. (See *Figure 3.98*.)





After the boxes are positioned properly, with the content in all three boxes being on the same plane, leveling can take place. When the leveling is complete and saved, the coordinates of each one are recorded in the **Plane Leveling** boxes. (See *Figure 3.98.*) Each set of coordinates correspond to a box and are labeled with Box 1 being represented by Vertex 1, and so on with Boxes 2 and 3. (For more information on 3D leveling, see *Activate Leveling Tool on page 9-15* in the 3D Analysis chapter.)

Notice that leveling on one plane is difficult for the illustrated sample. Only one box contains data residing on only one plane.

The other two boxes would require adjustment in size so only the level represented by the lighter color is included in their boundaries. The coordinates are as follows: (See Figure 3.99.)

Left – This corresponds to the left side of the cursor box and is the X coordinate of that location. (See *Figure 3.98*.)

Right – This corresponds to the right side of the cursor box and is the X coordinate of that location. (See *Figure 3.98*.)

Top – This corresponds to the top of the cursor box and is the Y coordinate of that location. (See *Figure 3.98*.)

Bottom – This corresponds to the bottom of the cursor box and is the Y coordinate of that location. (See *Figure 3.98*.)





Setting the Cursors: Enter Coordinates in 3D Cursor Window

Cursor Positioning by Manually Setting the Coordinates It is possible, for certain types of 3D production scans, to preset the 3D cursors for repetitive scans by entering the coordinates in the respective boxes. This works better with scans where most of the scan surface is on the same plane and the features being scanned are located far enough away from other features to allow preset leveling. Use the X and Y screen coordinates, with X=0, Y=0 being the bottom left corner of the scan area. (See *Figure 3.99*.) Enter the number for each coordinate in the corresponding Vertex variable box. (See *Figure 3.100*.)



NOTE: It is difficult to place these exactly by simply entering a number. It might require entering the number and observing the results several times to correctly position the cursor.



Figure 3.100 Matching Leveling Box and Cursor Locations

Line by Line Leveling

Line by line leveling was a feature for optical scans only. It is not available in the current systems.



	- 3D Leve Plane Vertex 1:	ling Cursor (μm) Leveling: Left 0.5	Top 0.5	Right	Bottom
The Line By Line Leveling is not available in the current systems.	Vertex 2: Vertex 3:	1.0 1.4 y Line Leveling (1.8 0.4 for Optical Scan):	1.1	1.6
		Line 1 1.0 Ito Level	Line 2 3.3	Line 3	Line 4

3D Measurement Cursor

The 3D measurement cursor is used to isolate an area of the scan, from which the measurements designated in the recipe for inclusion in the Analysis data (such as some of the parameters in General Parameters on page 65 and Roughness and Waviness Parameters on page 70), can be reported. If no numbers are entered in the 3D Measurement Cursor variable boxes to define the measurement area, the data is compiled for the entire scan area.





Setting the Cursors: Click and Drag

The 3D Measurement Cursor box is associated with the Activate Height Tool button

in the Analysis screen tool bar. In the Analysis screen, if the Activate Height Tool button is clicked on, a box appears that can be resized and moved using the click-and-drag method. As the box is drug around the scan image, the height of all data points in the box is averaged with respect to sample plane and reported under **Height** in the analysis statistics at the left side of the screen.

After the box is sized and positioned, its position can be entered in the 3D Measurement Cursor variable boxes.

- 1. Click on the CALC icon in the toolbar or click on Operations in the menu bar
- 2. Choose **Recalc**, to recalculate the parameters and place the cursor locations in the 3D Measurement Cursor variable boxes.

Setting the Cursors: Manually Entering Coordinates

Manually setting the cursors is accomplished by entering the coordinate position of the intended measurement box (Active Height Tool) directly into the **3D Measurement Cursors** variable boxes. The coordinates work as follows:

Left – This corresponds to the left side of the cursor box and is the X coordinate of that location. (See *Figure 3.103*.)

Right – This corresponds to the right side of the cursor box and is the X coordinate of that location. (See *Figure 3.103*.)

Top – This corresponds to the top of the cursor box and is the Y coordinate of that location. (See *Figure 3.103*.)

Bottom – This corresponds to the bottom of the cursor box and is the Y coordinate of that location. (See *Figure 3.103*.)

Click-and-Drag

Cursor Positioning Using

Set the Box Position in the 3D Measurement Cursor Variable Boxes



Figure 3.103 Matching Measurement Cursor Position to Measurement Box

3D Step Height Cursors

The 3D Step Height Cursors are two variable boxes that are designed to capture data on two planes and calculate the average difference in the height between them. For accurate results, all of the data in a cursor box should be on the same plane. In this way, the difference between the data in the two boxes is the average difference between the height of the two planes being measured.

Figure 3.104 3D Step Height Cursor Parameters

_ 3D Ste	- 3D Step Height Cursor [μm]							
	Left	Тор	Right	Bottom				
Left	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0				
Right	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0				

Setting the Cursors: Click and Drag

Cursor Positioning Using Click-and-Drag The **3D Step Height Cursor** boxes are associated with the **Activate Step Height Tool** button in the Analysis screen tool bar. In the Analysis screen, if the Activate Step Height Tool button is clicked on, two boxes appear that can be resized and moved using the click-and-drag method. As the boxes are drug around the scan image, the height of all data points in the box is averaged with respect to sample plane and reported under one of the height measurements (depending on which cursor box

is being moved) in the analysis statistics at the left side of the screen.

- 1. If the view of the sample surface is not from the top, click **View** in the menu bar to display it menu.
- 2. Choose **Top** from the View menu.
- 3. To determine the step height in the Analysis screen, the system subtracts the Z value of **Box 1** from the Z value of **Box 2**. The **Left** box, in the **3D Cursors** window, correlates to **Box 1** in the Analysis screen. This box should be placed on the lowest plane. Click in the center of **Box 1** and drag it to the base plane.



- 4. Resize the box to the proper dimensions to avoid artifacts and keep it separate from other planes.
- 5. Click in the center of Box 2 and drag it to the step plane.
- 6. Resize the box to the proper dimensions to avoid artifacts and keep it separate from other planes (like step edges or slopes).

After the box is sized and positioned, its position can be entered in the 3D Measurement Cursor variable boxes (see *Figure 3.104*) using the following procedure.

- 1. Click on the **CALC** icon in the tool bar, or to use the menu option on **Operations** in the menu bar to display its menu.
- 2. From the Operations menu, choose **Recalc**.

Both methods recalculate the parameters and place the cursor locations in the 3D Measurement Cursor variable boxes.

SETUP ANALYSIS TOOLS

This tool has two purposes that are used in the Analysis of the gathered data.

- First, the leveling of the data is accomplished based on a choice of data to be used as a leveling basis.
- Second, the data is compiled as a histogram for comparison of feature depth in the scan.

The parameters available in this window work on already accumulated data. Therefore, the parameters can be adjusted and recalculated over and over again on the same data to help analyze the scan results.

Both the leveling and the depth analysis histogram are discussed in this section.

Set the Box Position in the 3D Step Height Cursors Variable Boxes

Leveling Reference

The system offers three data planes to choose from for leveling the scan data. (See *Figure 3.105.*) The three options are:

- Most Populous Plane
- Highest Plane
- Lowest Plane

The leveling takes place based upon the data points identified in one of the three data distribution planes identified above. The planes are associated with modes that are defined as a bin or group of bins that hold a significant number of data points. The total Z-axis distance of the scanned object is divided up into equal Z-axis portions called bins.





The data bins form a histogram generated by the scan data. The contents of the bins are set using the parameters displayed directly below the Leveling Reference variable box in the **Setup Analysis Tools** dialog box. The parameters are:

- Number of Bins
- % for qualifying neighboring bins

Number of Bins

Bins are actually ranges in the Z scan height. The total Z scan height is divided by the number of **Bins** chosen. Each bin presents the number of data points collected in its range, as compiled from data collected across the entire scan length.

Percentage (%) for Qualifying Neighboring Bins

While it is possible to set up the bin distribution so that the points are clearly distributed in single bins, not spread over several bins, it is more likely that neighboring bins contain data points that, when taken together, constitute a mode. (See *Figure 3.106*.)



Figure 3.106 Data Point Distribution in Bins

In *Figure 3.106*, Scan A shows that the major distribution of points lie clearly in Z Min, Z Mid, and Z Max. The histogram of this distribution would be clearly presented in three ranges. However, in Scan B, the distribution for the Z Mid is between two bins. One bin near the center has 9 data points while its neighbor has 5 points. The user might want this distribution of points to be considered together as a mode. This is where the **Percentage for Qualifying Neighboring Bins** is used.



Figure 3.107 Histograms of Scans A and B

The user can set a percentage factor such that, if the bin containing the most data points (reference bin) has a neighboring bin that contains the user set percentage of the number of data points in the reference bin, it is also considered as part of the same mode and used in the leveling procedure.

EXAMPLE:

Using *Figure 3.106*, Scan B, if the user chose **Most Populous Plane** as the reference, and selected 50% as the **Percentage for Qualifying Neighboring Bins**, the system would check each mode in the scan data to determine which contains the highest number of data points. The modes would be comprised of bins or sets of bins, where a bin with a significant number of data points has one or more neighbors that contain at least 50% of the data points that it has. The mode with the highest number of data points is then considered to be the Most Populous Plane and is used in the leveling process. (See the shaded area in *Figure 3.108*, Scan B.)





Leveling Reference

Three reference planes exist, from which one must be chosen to level the scan. Two of the planes are easy to understand and use; the Highest Plane and Lowest Plane.

- Highest Plane Referring to *Figure 3.108*, the Highest Plane corresponds to the data set in the Z Max range (or mode if looking at the histogram).
- Lowest Plane In the same illustration, the Lowest Plane corresponds to the data set in the Z Min range.

The third plane, Most Populous Plane, is more difficult to deal with and, depending on the topography of the sample, could lead to inconsistent results. The following illustrations describe the most common scan situations and the possible difficulties associated with using the Most Populous Plane for leveling and data analysis. The Scan illustrated in *Figure 3.109* would be an acceptable candidate for Most Populous Plane. This scan is of a single attribute with a relatively large surface area surrounding it. No matter which scan trace is used, the sample surface level, in this case the Lowest Plane, would also be the Most Populous Plane. Either the Lowest Plane or the Most Populous plane could be used for leveling.

Figure 3.109 Flat Surface Scan of a Single Object



The scan illustrated in *Figure 3.110* would not be an acceptable candidate for Most Populous Plane. This scan has four traces that would give different data sets depending on which trace was used to level the scan. If Most Populous Plane was chosen as the leveling reference, traces 1, 2, and 4 would level the trace on the Lowest Plane of the scan. Trace 3 would level the trace on the Highest Plane of the scan. This would change the way the data is analyzed. The depths calculated from either of its two neighboring scans would be very different.

Figure 3.110 Most Populous Plane Trace Variation



Opening the Setup Analysis Tools Dialog Box

From the Recipe Editor, click on the Setup analysis tools button to open the Setup Analysis Tools dialog box. (See *Figure 3.111*.)

Figure 3.111 Setup Analysis Tools Dialog Box



Setup Analysis Tools – Leveling

The Setup Analysis Tool's Leveling function and the histogram are both enabled by clicking in the empty checkbox next to Enable Automated Depth Analysis. (See *Figure 3.111*.)

To activate them, use the following procedure.

1. From the Recipe Editor, click on **Setup Analysis Tools** to display the **Setup Analysis Tools** dialog box. (See *Figure 3.111*.)

	Setup Analysis Tools 🛛 🛛 🔀				
To evolute the loweling and	Depth Analysis CMP Analysis Setup				
depth analysis functions, click in the empty checkbox ——	Enable Automatic Histogram Based Leveling				
and the variable fields become active.	Leveling Most Populous Plane Minimum Mode Population 5 % Reference (% of Total Points) (range 0 - 20%)				
	Depth 1 [Next] Most Populous Mode Number of Bins (range 20 - 200): 20				
	Depth 2 Relative to Leveling Reference (% height of local maximum) (range 20 - 100%)				

Figure 3.112 Enable Automatic Depth Analysis

2. In the Setup Analysis Tools dialog box, click in the empty **Enable Automated Depth Analysis** checkbox. (See *Figure 3.112*.)

Change Leveling Reference

- 3. The Leveling Reference The leveling attribute must be tied to the available data set. The leveling algorithms are set up to operate on one of three data sets (planes), Most Populous Plane, Highest Plane, and Lowest Plane.
 - a. To select a data plane, click on the menu arrow next to Leveling Reference. (See *Figure 3.113.*)

b. Select the required data plane by clicking on it in the **Leveling Reference** drop-down menu. (See *Figure 3.113*.)

To change the leveling attribute, click on the menu arrow next tot the Leveling Reference and choose the required attribute from the	Setup Analysis Tools Depth Analysis CMP Analysis Setup Enable Automatic Histogr	am Based Leveling
menu.	Leveling Reference Most Populous Plane Highest Plane Lowest Plane	Minimum Mode Population 5 (% of Total Points) (range 0 - 20%)
	Depth 1 [(Next) Most Populous Mode	Number of Bins (range 20 - 200): 20
	Depth 2 Relative to Leveling Reference	% for Qualifying Neighboring Bins 50 % (% height of local maximum) (range 20 - 100%)
		OK Cancel

Figure 3.113 Setup Analysis Tools – Leveling Reference

Change Number of Bins

4. The Number of Bins – highlight the current number in the Number of Bins variable box and enter the new number of bins to be used. (See *Figure 3.114.*) Remember, the more bins, the fewer number of data points each bin might contain. Be sure to carefully evaluate the distribution of data points in the bins so that the % for Qualifying Neighboring Bins can ensure that the proper number of points are included in the calculated modes for the leveling procedure.



NOTE: The available range for the number of bins is 20 - 200.



Figure 3.114 Setup Analysis Tools – Setting the Number of Bins

Change % qualifying neighboring bins % for qualifying neighboring bins – Highlight the current percentage, in the % for qualifying neighboring bins variable box, and enter the new percentage. (See *Figure 3.114.*)

Remember, the number of bins is divided up in equal spacing increments across the entire depth of the scan. The more bins, the more significant the **% for qualifying neighboring bins** becomes. This number, as well as the other attributes in this window can be adjusted after the scan data is collected; so assessing the data might help adjust the percentage to include all necessary data points.

In the illustration presented in *Figure 3.114*, the bins in the mid range, bins 7-10, all contain data points. To isolate the data points that are to be considered as part of the mode, a percentage must be entered that only accumulates the desired data points. If Most Populous Plane was chosen as the reference, the system accumulates the total of all adjacent bins, in data point clusters, matching the percentage set in % for qualifying neighboring bins, and uses the totals to determine which bins constitute the Most Populous Plane. If 50% was set as the % for qualifying neighboring bins, the system would key in on bin #8 and include the contents of bin #9 because its contents were greater than 50% of the number of data points in bin #8. The data points in bins #7 and 10 would not be included because they were less than the required 50%. The combination of data points would show that this is the Most Populous Plane in the scan and perform the leveling and depth calculations from this data.



Figure 3.115 Histogram of a Scan

In the Histograms, the different planes (modes) are color coded for easy reference and identification. The Histogram is displayed in green. The major modes, when displayed, appear in red.

6. After all adjustments are complete, click **OK** to save the changes, or **Cancel** to discard the changes.

Diagnostic Options

This dialog box presents options that can be used to run diagnostic scans such as **No Motion** and **No Nulling** scans.



NOTE: Scans using these options should only be used by KLA–Tencor service personnel or applications engineers for diagnostic purposes only.

1. To display the **Diagnostic Options** dialog box:

- a. Click on **Recipe** in the menu bar to display its menu,
- b. Click on **Diagnostic...** from the drop-down menu. (See *Figure 3.116.*)

Step 1 <i>a.</i> To access the Diagnostic Options dialog box, click on Recipe in the Menu Bar to display its menu.	Profiler - [Recipe Editor - 13X13] Recipe Dations Help New Drit+N Den 22 132 Den Crit+O Save Crit+O Save Crit+O Save Crit+O Save Scan Size (µm); Save Y Scan Size (µm);	×
Step 1 <i>b.</i> Then click on Diagnostic button.	Difference Ctil H Print Ctil H Print Ctil H Egit Recipe Editor can Speed (µm/s): 20 Y Traces: 50 Egit Recipe Editor Sampling Rate (H2): 200 Y Spacing (µm): 0.260 General Sampling Rate (H2): 200 Y Spacing (µm): 0.260 Boaring Ratio Scan Direction: Start: C Boaring Ratio Scan Time: Iceoch End: High Spot Count Scan Time: Individual Trace (s): 0.7 Total Data Points: 65050 Approx. Total (hr.mm:s): 0:1:7.7 Point Interval (µm): 0.0100000 Stylus: Appled Force (mg): 1.00 Recommended Maximum (mg): 0.05 Stylus: Analysis Tools Sylus Radius (µm): 0.02 Vertical Ranging: Range/Resolution: 6.5un/0.0039A Profile Type :	
	Substr. Clear Status	s

Figure 3.116 Recipe Editor - Recipe Menu

This displays the Diagnostic Options dialog box. (See *Figure 3.117.*)
 To chose an option for a diagnostic scan, click in the empty checkbox next to the desired option. A check (✓) in the checkbox indicates that the option is chosen.

Each **Option** is discussed below.



CAUTION: Each of the options is active for the recipe in which it is saved. If the recipe is used as a template to create other recipes, the option will remain intact unless turned off. This could create numerous scan data deviations from the expected scan results.

3. Click **OK** when all required options have been chosen. (See *Figure 3.117.*)

Step 2 Click in the check box of the option that is to be used in the diagnostic. A check (\checkmark) in the box means the option is chosen.

agnostic Options	×	_	Step 3 Click on OK when the
High Resolution Camera Only: No Motion Scan: Do Not Null Before Scan:			desired options have been chosen.
Scan Options:			
Do Not Back Scan Before Scan:			
Do Not Filter Noise:			
Do Not Level:			
No Linearity Correction:			
Linearity Calibration Only:			
Use Raw Data:			
No Stylus Arc Correction:	Help		

Figure 3.117 Diagnostic Options Dialog Box

Di

High Resolution Camera Only-Diagnostic Options

The diagnostic options presented here are used by the P-15 camera. In some systems supported by this software, more than one camera is used. In those systems, this set of options would only apply to the high magnification camera.

Table 3.29	High Resolution	Camera Only	- Diagnostic	Options
------------	-----------------	-------------	--------------	---------

Option	Description
No Motion Scan	During the scan, data is collected but the stage does not move. (See <i>Figure 3.118</i> .)
	NOTE: This scan is only available in 2D.
Do Not Null Before Scan	No movement of the elevator (for nulling) occurs before the scan is performed and the data collected. (See <i>Figure 3.118</i> .)

Figure 3.118 High Resolution Camera Only: Diagnostic Options



Scan Options

This is a set of miscellaneous scan related options.

Figure 3.119 Scan Options: Diagnostic Options

- Scan Options:	
Do Not Back Scan Before Scan:	
Do Not Filter Noise:	
Do Not Level:	
No Linearity Correction:	

 Table 3.30
 Standard - Diagnostic Options

Option	Description
No Back Scan Before Scan	Back Scan is a technique where, immediately prior to the scan, the stage moves the scan start position back and begins the scan nulling and movement. The mechanical portion of the system has an opportunity to settle before actually reaching the beginning of the data collection.
	This option prevents the Back Scan positioning from taking place. (See <i>Figure 3.119</i> .)
No Noise Filter	This prevents postprocessing of the scan data with cutoff filters. (See <i>Figure 3.119</i> .)
No Leveling	This prevents postprocessing data leveling of scan data. (See <i>Figure 3.119</i> .)
No Linearity Correction	Only used during the Linearity Calibration. (See <i>Figure 3.119</i> .)

Linearity Calibration Only – Diagnostic Options

Option	Description
Use Raw Data	Raw data from the scan is presented with no postprocessing; without scaling to the measurement range.
	NOTE: This option has no useful application apart from the Linearity Calibration.
No Stylus Arc Correction	Data from the scan is presented with no postprocessing arcal correction.
	NOTE: This option has no useful application apart from the Linearity Calibration.

 Table 3.31
 Linearity Calibration Only – Diagnostic Options

Figure 3.120 Linearity Calibration Only

- Linearity Calibration Only:		
Use Raw Data:		
No Stylus Arc Correction:		

Saving Scan Recipes

Options for Saving Scan Recipes

The recipes that are created using the **Recipe Editor** must be saved to capture the new or modified parameters. Two options available for saving a recipe are accessed in the **Recipe** drop-down menu are:

- Save, is used to either save changes to a current recipe, or to save the content of New recipe.
- Save As, is used when changes have been made to an existing recipe and the user wishes to preserve both the new recipe and the original one.

The two options are explained in detail later in this section. (See *Figure 3.121* and also *Figure 3.116 on page 3-106*.)





Recipe Naming Convention

The P-15 system's software allows for Scan and Sequence Recipe names that are 79 characters long. This allows the user adequate space to make names that describe the content of the recipes being named.

While the longer names provide greater flexibility for descriptive naming, several software display locations exist where the recipe names are displayed in truncated form. This could present difficulties when attempting to identify which recipe is actually represented by the truncated recipe name.

If a long name is to be used, make the first eight characters in the name reflect the recipe difference so its truncated version can be easily recognized in other screens.

EXAMPLE:

If the first 8 or more characters of several Scan Recipes are identical, the following problem could arise when attempting to identify which recipe was used to create the scan data. (See *Figure 3.122*.)

Figure 3.122 Catalog: Scan Data Screen



In *Figure 3.122* both the Scan Data name and the Scan Recipe name are truncated down to eight characters in the Scan Data file list. When the Scan Data file is clicked on, it highlights and the Scan Data file name is totally displayed (up to 74 of the 79 characters) in the Scan Data Name reference box. The Scan Recipe name is not displayed in total any place on this screen.

If the user attempts to discover the actual recipe name by opening the Scan Data File, the Analysis screen is opened and displays the Scan Data information. The Scan Data file name is completely displayed in the title bar but the Scan Recipe name is still truncated to 10 characters.

When a Scan Data file is chosen (clicked on) it highlights and the **Scan Data** file name is totally displayed in the **Scan Data Name** display box. The Scan Recipe is not totally displayed, only the first eight characters of the name.

In the Recipe display portion of the **Catalog: Scan Data** screen, both the name of the Scan Data and the Recipe ID name are truncated. (See the note above.)


Figure 3.123 Analysis Screen

The Scan Data name appears totally displayed at the top of the screen.

The Scan Recipe, used to gather the data, is listed in truncated form (10 characters only).

If the scan recipes used to gather data have the same first 8 or 10 characters, it could be very difficult to tell which actual recipe was used to gather the data presented in the Scan Data file.

END OF EXAMPLE

Use the following procedure to name a Recipe.

- Use file names that contain different characters in the first 8 characters. (See EXAMPLE above.)
- Be sure to connect all words in the file name together. Use an underline "_" to separate the words.

If the words are not connected as in *Figure 3.124*, a warning is generated. (See *Figure 3.125*.)

Figure 3.124 Save Recipe As - Improper Name Format

Save Recipe As	×
Name: GREAT NEW RECIPE	
OK / Cancel	Help

Notice the spaces between the words. This generates a system message. (See *Figure 3.125*.)



Recipe
Recipe name can not be empty OR contain spaces or punctuation characters.

The words need to be set together or separated by an underline "_" character. (See *Figure 3.126.*)



Notice that the spaces are	Save Recipe As	×
filled in using the underline "_" character.	Name GREAT_NEW_RECIPE	
	OK Cancel Help	

1. From the Recipe Editor screen, click on **Recipe** in the Menu bar to display its menu. (See *Figure 3.127*.)

2. Click on:

- a. **Save** to save the changes to the current recipe. This immediately saves recipe with no further operator requirement.
- b. **Save As** to preserve the original recipe unchanged and to save the changes as a new recipe. (See *Figure 3.127*.)



Stop 1 Click on Pasing in the	<u>Recipe</u> Options	<u>Sample Va</u>			
	New	Ctrl+N			
Menu Bar.	Open	Ctrl+O			
	(<u>S</u> ave)	Ctrl+S			
Step 2 Click on either Save to	Save As				
save changes in the current	XX Mieur				
recipe, or Save As to preserve	Theta View				
the current recipe unchanged and	<u>Center Object</u> Teach Die Grid				
the changes in a new recipe.					
	S <u>t</u> art Scan				
	Analysis				
	Diagnostic				
	Info	Ctrl+l			
	-				
	Print	Ctrl+P			
	E <u>x</u> it Recipe Edito	or			

3. If Save As is clicked, the Save Recipe As dialog box appears. (See *Figure 3.127*.)

4. Type in the new recipe name, making sure there are no spaces between words. (See *Figure 3.128*.)

Figure 3.128 Save Recipe As Dialog Box

Step 5 Enter the new recipe name and click on **OK** to enter the Recipe name into the Recipe file.

Э	Save Recipe As			×	
e Name: GREAT_NEW_RECIPE					
	ОК	Cancel	Help		

5. Click on **OK** to form the new recipe. (See *Figure 3.128.*)

Entering Comments

Introduction

This feature is designed for recording important comments about the recipe. The only field that is active for user input is the Comments: field. The other fields are automatically set by the system to reflect the specific recipe.

Procedure

1. Click on **Recipe** in the menu bar of the **Recipe Editor**.



Figure 3.129 Recipe Editor

2. The Recipe menu is displayed. Click on Info to display the Recipe Information dialog box. (ALTERNATIVE: Press Ctrl + 1.)

3. Click in the **Comments** text field and enter the information that is to accompany the recipe.

	Recipe Information	x
Step 3 The cursor should be blinking in this field. Enter any required comments in the field.	Name: _OFF150 User:	
Step 4 After comments have been added, click on OK to save them and close the dialog box.	OK Cancel	¥

Figure 3.130 Recipe Information Dialog Box

4. When the information is entered, click on **OK** to save it and close the dialog box.

STYLUS CHANGE PROCEDURE

INTRODUCTION

Styli are available in various sizes for a variety of different scanning requirements. Each stylus is a delicate tool and requires careful handling.

Styli are color-coded to indicate radius. Check the color band on the stylus arm against the following table for the stylus radius.

I AVIII AVAIIADIE L-SIVIUS RAUIUS					
Color Code Band	Stylus Radius (μm)	Cone Angle (Deg.)			
Red	12.5	60			
Yellow	5.0	60			
Green	2.0	60			
Orange	2.0	45			
Black ^a	0.3–0.8	85			
Black ^a	0.1–0.2	85			
Dual Black (Not recommended for the P-15)	0.03-0.05 (DuraSharp)	40			

 Table 4.1
 Available L-Stylus Radius

a. For radius values, refer to the SEM documents provided with the stylus.

This chapter describes:

- Proximity Sensor Activation on page 4-2
- Stylus Removal and Replacement on page 4-4
- Scan Position Offset Calibration on page 4-11

PROXIMITY SENSOR ACTIVATION

Before beginning the procedure and subsequent calibrations, it is important that the Proximity Sensor settings be adjusted in order to ensure optimum system performance and to protect the sensor and stylus.

1. Ensure that the Proximity Sensor is being used during the following calibrations.

Defining parameters used by the proximity sensor are set in the Proximity Sensor Configuration dialog box. To access it from the **Profiler – [Catalog]** screen, click on the **Configuration** icon. (See *Figure 4.1.*)





Step 1 Click on the Configuration icon to display the Configuration screen.

2. In the Configuration screen, click Proximity Sensor... to display the Proximity Sensor Configuration dialog box. (See *Figure 4.3*.)

Figure 4.2 Configuration Screen

	<mark>₩ Profiler - [Configuration]</mark> <u>File I</u> asks <u>H</u> elp		*Online/Local ×
Step 2 Click on the Proximity Sensor button to open the Proximity Sensor Configuration dialog box.	System Sgriple Machine History Becorder New Options Export Path Defaults Pattern Recognition Options Seguence Execution Options Lowest Elevator Position Lowest Elevator Position Signal Tower Progimity Sensor	- System Beometry - Handler Load Position: X (µm): 0 Y (µm): 0 Theta (deg): 0 Elevator (µm): 0 Stage Configuration: Theta Soft Home Position (deg): 1 Covering Offset (deg): 0 Elevator Focus Speed (µm/s): 1000 Elevator Softe Position (µm): 23.96 Elevator Softe Position (µm): 0 Elevator Charger Configuration Charger	- Stylus Details Current Stylus Details: Property Value Name 5 µm Stylus Tip Padue Scan Type Contact Current ID: 1-5-567 5 µm Stylus Eeplace Stylus Ip History Clear Status
	JUNHGURATION		Clear Status

3. In the **Proximity Sensor Configuration** dialog box, click in the empty checkbox next to **Use Proximity Sensor**. (See *Figure 4.3.*) The ✓ in the checkbox enables the option so the system uses the **Proximity Sensor** to stop the head from contacting the sample during the null on a sample surface, thus helping prevent damage to the sample or the stylus.

Proximity Sensor Configuration Dialog Box

	Proximity Sensor Configuration	Step 6 After all changes are complete, click OK.
Optional: Click in the empty checkbox next to Autofocus After Move to enable this option. A check (\checkmark) in the box indicates that it is enabled.	Enable Proximity Sensor Offset:	Step 3 Click in the empty checkbox next to Use Proximity Sensor and (Step 4) Enable Proximity Sensor Offset to enable these options. A check (✓) in the box indicates that they are enabled.

Figure 4.3

4. The **Enable Proximity Sensor Offset** option is very important when measuring small artifacts that are on elevated surfaces or near the edge of the sample. This ensures that the null and autofocus are taking place at the same Z level as detected by the proximity sensor. In addition, it protects the sensor and head from damage, especially near the wafer edge.

Click in the empty checkbox to put a \checkmark in it. This enables the Proximity Sensor Offset option. (See *Figure 4.3*.)

5. The **Autofocus After Move** option is designed null and focus on the sample in the XY view screen. It does require time to perform this function, so it can be turned off for running sequences and other procedures where the user does not need to see the image.

Click in the empty checkbox to put a \checkmark in it. This enables the Autofocus After Move option. (See *Figure 4.3*.)

- 6. Click OK to close the Proximity Sensor Configuration dialog box.
- 7. To save the changes made in the **Configuration** screen, click on **File** from the tool bar at the top of the screen to display the **File** menu.
- 8. Click on **Save** from the **File** menu.
- 9. Exit the **Configuration** screen by clicking on the small icon in the top left corner of the screen (to the left of the word Configuration), then from the drop-down menu click on **Close**.

STYLUS REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT

The following discussion contains procedures for changing the stylus in the sensor assembly of the P15 system.

Stylus replacement in the P-15 system is relatively simple. *Important:*

Use only an approved stylus from KLA-Tencor.

Do not modify the measurement head in any way. If, while using the prescribed procedure, there is difficulty in mounting the stylus, call KLA-Tencor Customer Service.

Know the stylus type and radius for input later in the procedure.

Follow the instructions as presented in this section to avoid omitting steps.



CAUTION: The stylus tip is very fragile! When removing the stylus from its shipping container, use stainless tweezers (422320) to hold the arm while gently peeling back the foam. Grasp the arm in the center section and lift the stylus out tip first. To place the stylus back in its shipping container, place the rounded end into the round end of the holder and slowly rotate the tip end down. Release the tip only when it is properly positioned in the grove.

The procedure consists of six parts:

- Stylus removal procedure
- Stylus replacement procedure
- Scan Position Offset Calibration.

Stylus Removal

1. From the **Profiler [Catalog]** screen click on the **Configuration** icon to display the **Configuration** screen. (See *Figure 4.4.*)

Fig. Frofiler - [Cata	alog] Maanum Haat Diaamaatin Taaka	Hala				*0)nline/Loc	al X	
<u>File Euk S</u> ample	START & T	 ∰ 2D 3	D					AT D	\ \
		Scan Recipe Name	:					1	Į
Scan Becine		DRMMD							
	Recipe Path:	Recipe Name	Length (µm)	Sampling Rate (Hz)	Speed (µm/s)	Creation Date (yyyy-mm-dd)	Time	⊸	Step 1 Click on the
Scan Data Sequence Recipe Sequence Data	SCANRCP Generated by DRM	DRNHD _DRNSML STEPHTH STEPHTL STEPHTL TIPCTRL HIST	10.5 5.50 500 500 12 500	200 200 50 50 50 200 200	100 100 50 50 2 100	2000-08-17 2000-09-14 2000-09-14 2000-09-14 2000-09-14 2000-09-14 2000-09-14	10:35 11:54 14:23 14:19 14:23 14:35 16:54		Configuration icon to display the Configuration screen.
	Print	New	View	/ <u>M</u> odify	STA	RT XY	′ View		
SCAN BECIPE CAT	ALOG						Clear	Status	

Figure 4.4 Profiler [Catalog] - Click on the Calibration Icon

2. From the **Configuration** screen click on the menu arrow to the right of the stylus type variable box to display its menu. (See *Figure 4.5*.)

File Tasks Help			*Online/Local Step 2 Click the menu
System Sample Machine History Becorder New Options	- System Geometry - Handler Load Position: Manual Load Position: X (µm): 0 Y (µm): 0 Theta (deg): 0 Theta (deg): 0 Elevator (µm): 0	- Stylus Details- Current Stylus Details- Name 25 µm Stylus Tip Radius 25 000 µm Incl Angle 60 00 deg. Color Band Single Blue Seare Time Contents	Current ID: 316-25
Egrort Path Defaults <u>Pattern Recognition Options</u> Seguence Execution Options <u>Ineta Soft Home Position</u> <u>Lowest Elevator Position</u> <u>Manual Load Position</u> <u>Progimity Sensor</u>	Levator (µm; 10 Levator (µm; 10 Levator (µm; 10 Levator (µm; 10 Levator 0 (µm; 10 Levator 0 (µm; 10 Levator 10 Levator 10 (µm; 10 Levator 10 (µm;	Current ID: 3-16-25	25 µm Stylus 25 µm Stylus 12.5 µm Stylus 5 µm Stylus 2 µm 45d Stylus 2 µm Stylus Sub-µm Stylus Durasharp A Stylus 7 - TBD
	Safety Interlock On:		Step 3 Click on the stylus type of the stylus that is to be mounted.

Figure 4.5 Stylus Force Calibration Button

- 3. Click on the stylus type that will replace the current stylus. (See *Figure 4.5.*)
- 4. Click on **Replace Stylus** to display its dialog box. (See *Figure 4.6.*)

System Sample Machine History <u>R</u> ecorder <u>N</u> ow Options Export Path Defaults	- System Geometry - Handler Load Position: X (µm): 0 Y (µm): 0 Y (µm): 0 Theta (deg): 0 Elevator (µm): 0 Elevator (µm): 0	Stylus Details- Current Stylus Details- Property Value Name 2,m45d Stylus Tip Fradus 2000 µm Incl Angle 45,000 deg Color Band Single Orange Scan Type Contact	
jeatern recognition upions jeguence Execution Options 	Stage Configuration: Theta Soft Home Position (deg): [d] Leveling Offset (deg): -0.00014l Lowest Elevator Position (µm): [23.96] Elevator Focus Speed (µm/s): 1000 Elevator Social Speed (µm/s): 50 Move Elevator to Safe Position Before Moving Stage: I Elevator Safe Position (µm): 0	Current ID: 115567	 Step 4 To begin the stylus replacement procedure, click Replace Stylus to display its dialog box
		Clear Status	

Figure 4.6 Configuration Screen

5. To make it easier to track stylus performance, the system provides an opportunity to name the stylus. The type of stylus has already been set before moving to this screen (see Step 3.), and is identified in the **Type** variable box. This variable cannot be changed in this dialog box, only in the Configuration screen. The name identifies the specific stylus of the Type referred to in the **Type** variable box.

The **Stylus ID** dialog box is displayed. (See *Figure 4.7.*) It contains the name of the stylus and a list of previously identified styli of the Type referenced in the **Type** variable box.

To identify a new stylus: When using a new stylus, double-click in the ID variable box and enter the new name.

To enter the name of previous stylus: When mounting a previously used stylus, click on the name of the stylus from the **Previous ID's** list. The name should appear in the **ID** box.

	Stylus ID 🛛	1
Step 5 To enter a new stylus name, double-click to highlight the old name in the ID box and enter the new name.	Please verify the selected Stylus type. To choose a different type press Cancel. Select / type an ID number or leave the field empty. To proceed, press OK. New Stylus Type: 25 µm Stylus ID: 3-16-26 Previous IDs:	The Type of stylus being mounted in the system should be reflected in the Type box.
If a previously used stylus is being mounted, click on the name given to that stylus.		
Step 6 When the stylus name has been successfully entered, click OK to save it and close the dialog box.	Current Stylus Type: 25 µm Stylus ID: 3-16-25 Never use again OK Cancel	

Figure 4.7 Stylus ID Dialog Box

- 6. When the new name is entered, click **OK** to save it and exit the dialog box. (See *Figure 4.7.*)
- 7. The profiler message box is displayed inquiring if the name displayed is the correct stylus name. Click **Yes** to affirm the name or **No** if the name is incorrect and needs to be changed.

When **Yes** is clicked, the system head is automatically raised to the manual load height for easy access to the stylus.

(If **No** is clicked, it is necessary to name the stylus again.)

Figure 4.8 Message Box for Stylus Name Affirmation

Step 7 Click **Yes** if the name reflected next to ID is the name of the stylus just entered in the Stylus ID dialog box.



8. After **Yes** is chosen, another message box is displayed. (See *Figure 4.9*.) This box states that the stylus can be changed.

Notice that the message box contains a caution telling the user to "ensure the sensor is unlocked." Disregard this part of the message, it is not for the MicroHead II sensor assembly.

DO NOT CLICK OK UNTIL THE STYLUS HAS BEEN CHANGED.





9. Open the Stage door.



CAUTION: Do not operate the stage or any motor driven component with the door open or the system will have to be rebooted.

- 10. Loosen the thumbscrew holding the stylus wrench to the side of the head and slide the wrench out of its holder.
- 11. The head of the stylus clamp screw is visible from the front of the instrument. Place a finger under the Stylus Mount to support it while the screw is being loosened. Loosen the screw by inserting the stylus wrench and turning the wrench counterclockwise 1/2 turn. Be careful to apply turning torque only. Do not push against the screw head any harder than is necessary to seat the wrench. (See *Figure 4.10* and *Figure 4.11*.) Do not remove the screw.



Figure 4.10 Supporting Stylus Mount During Stylus Change

12. With the stylus clamp screw loose, take hold of the stylus with tweezers and pull gently straight to the left until the stylus comes free. (See *Figure 4.11*.)



Figure 4.11 Sensor Assembly - Loosening Stylus Clamp Screw

Stylus Replacement

1. Using tweezers, take hold of the new stylus with the tip pointing downward toward the stage. Insert the long arm of the stylus into the support groove in the stylus arm. Gently maneuver it into the slot. Once in the slot, move it up and down gently to ensure that it reaches the end of the slot and seats properly. (See *Figure 4.12.*)





2. Support the **stylus mount (arm) and stylus** with a finger to protect it from damage while tightening the mounting screw. (See *Figure 4.13*.)



Figure 4.13Supporting Stylus and Mount During Tightening Procedure

3. While supporting the stylus and the stylus arm, gently tighten the clamp screw to hold the stylus in place. Do not over tighten or damage can occur to the stylus arm pivot. (See *Figure 4.13* and *Figure 4.14*.)

Figure 4.14 Sensor Assembly - Seating the New Stylus



4. Remove the wrench from the clamp screw and replace it in its mount. Tighten the thumbscrew to hold the wrench in place.

5. When the stylus installation is complete, click OK. (See Figure 4.15.)

Message Box for Stylus Change Permission



6. The system performs an Applied Force calibration.

Scan Position Offset Calibration

Introduction

Figure 4.15

As soon as the Applied Force calibration is complete, the Scan Position Offset procedure is initiated. The Scan Position Offset Calibration procedure scans for data that it then uses to calculate the X-, Y-axis offsets from the optics and stylus, for positioning the sample stage.

For the standard styli this procedure is performed in the following order:

- 1. 150 µm (standard) calibration
- 2. If the 150 μ m scan fails to locate the triangle, then the 500 μ m (backup) calibration is performed.
- 3. If the 500 μ m was performed successfully, the 150 μ m calibration must be performed again.

Step 5 When the stylus installation is complete, click on OK.

Calibration Procedure

Use the Stylus Alignment Tool (KLA-Tencor Part Number 219517 – see *Figure 4.16*) to perform the Scan Position Offset Calibration and determine the distance that the stylus tip is offset from the crosshair overlay in the XY View window.





1. A message box is displayed requesting the user to place the Scan Position Offset tool on the stage. (See *Figure 4.17*.)





2. Open the stage door.

Step 10 After loading the Stylus Alignment Tool, click on **MAN LOAD** again to send the stage back under the

stylus.

Figure 4.18 Manual Load from the Scan Offset Calibration Window

- **3**. Place the **Stylus Alignment Tool** precisely in the center of the stage, squarely positioned with respect to the XY axis.
- 4. Turn the vacuum ON using the switch on the upper left inside door frame.



- 5. Close the stage door.
- 6. Click OK in the message box. (See Figure 4.17.)

The **Scan Offset Calibration Option** dialog box is displayed (see *Figure 4.19*) on top of the Calibration screen.

Two columns present the two options used to set up the Scan Offset Calibration. The first column is the **Size** column. It is used to determine the length of the step that is to be scanned and, therefore, which triangle the scan is to be performed on. If the step is 150 μ m, the system uses the 300 μ m triangle. If the step is 500 μ m, the system uses the 1000 μ m (1 mm) triangle.

7. Choose 150 μ m (standard) to continue with the calibration. (See *Figure 4.19*)



Figure 4.19 Scan Position Offset Calibration Options dialog box

8. Use the Default recipe unless there is a very good reason not to.

RECIPE TYPES. Two calibration options exist in the **Scan Offset Calibration Option** dialog box. Each option provides the user with the opportunity to choose between using a default recipe or to create/use a custom recipe. Default and Custom recipes are explained below:

- **Default**: This recipe is designed to operate with a scan speed and stylus force setting that is safe for the stylus. The default settings are the KLA-Tencor recommended recipe settings for all the calibrations.
- **Custom**: This recipe type offers the user the option to customize recipe parameters to meet specific scan requirements. In the Recipe Editor there are seven windows, each with configurable parameters. (See *Figure 4.20*.) For the **Scan Position Offset Calibration**, the only **Recipe Editor** window necessary is the **Scan Parameter Definition** that appears when the editor is first opened (see *Figure 4.23*). When chosen, the **Scan Parameter Definition** button (in the top left corner of the screen, circled in *Figure 4.20*) appears to be indented.





9. The recipes are set as follows:



CAUTION: KLA-Tencor recommends using the Default recipes unless there is a very good reason for creating a custom recipe.



Figure 4.23.)

ii. If the new parameter values were not already saved, a dialog box requires the user to choose between the save options before exiting the Recipe Editor. Choose Save Changes to set the changes to the Custom recipe so they are used in the scan.



Figure 4.23 Scan Parameter Definition - _OFF150 - Recipe Editor

10. From the **Scan Offset Calibration** screen, click **MAN LOAD** in the tool bar to move the stage back beneath the stylus. (See *Figure 4.18*.)

Figure 4.24 ZOOM IN - Scan Offset Calibration



11. (BEFORE CONTINUING see CAUTION below.) Click FOCUS in the tool bar. The Stylus Alignment Tool's surface image comes into focus. (See *Figure 4.24*.)

		CAUTION: As the stylus lowers toward the Stylus Alignment tool, watch carefully to ensure that both the proximity sensor and the stylus come down on the tools measurement surface. With the Proximity Sensor Offset option chosen in the Proximity Sensor Configuration box, the proximity sensor is coming down directly on the position where the measurement is to be made. If the stylus and the sensor are not descending directly onto the stylus alignment tool's measurement area, press the Space Bar on the computer keyboard or a mouse click, to stop the stylus descent. Manually relocate the tool under the stylus. Click on FOCUS again to resume the procedure.	
	12.	12. The zoom setting should be the same as that at which the scans are perform KLA-Tencor recommends that the optics be zoomed all the way out (set at 0 that the desired zoom setting be locked. (See <i>Saving the Current Zoom Pos</i> on page 5-12.)	
		To zoom in or zoom out, click and hold the correct button until the optics are at the required zoom setting. (See <i>Figure 4.24</i> .)	
BEGIN Align Sample 13 Procedure	13.	The Stylus Alignment Tool must be aligned with respect to the X-, Y-axis in order for the calibration to be as accurate as possible. Click on View in the menu bar to display its menu. (See <i>Figure 4.25</i> .)	
	14.	Choose Align Sample from the menu. (See Figure 4.25.)	
		This displays the Alignment Angle Dialog Box. (See Figure 4.26.)	





15. In the Alignment Angle dialog box, leave the setting at the default, "0" and click **OK** to accept the alignment angel of 0° . (See *Figure 4.26*.)

Figure 4.26 Alignment Angle Dialog Box

Alignment Angle			×
Alignment Angle:	I	Degrees	
OK	Cancel	Help	

The prompt at the bottom of the screen now says,.

Click the left mouse button to teach the first point

- 16. Use the arrow buttons to locate the border line between the $300 \,\mu\text{m}$ triangles and the $1000 \,\mu\text{m}$ triangle. Still using the arrow buttons, follow the line to the left side of the tool. (See *Figure 4.27*.)
- 17. Move the cursor to the line and click precisely on the line.

The prompt at the bottom of the screen now says,

Press OK to accept the first alignment location

Click **OK** at the bottom right corner of the screen.
 The prompt at the bottom of the screen now says,

Click the left mouse button to teach the second point





19. Use the left arrow button follow the dividing line to the right until it reaches the end of the line. (See *Figure 4.27*.)

END Align Sample

Procedure

20. Move the cursor directly over the line and click precisely on the line.

The system adjusts the theta alignment so the Stylus alignment tool is lined up with the X- and Y-axis. The prompt at the bottom of the screen now says,

Press OK to accept the second alignment location

21. Click **OK** at the bottom right of the screen to accept the stage alignment of the Stylus Alignment Tool.

The prompt at the bottom of the screen now says,

Focus and align tool crosshairs with screen crosshairs

There are two different alignment patterns that can be used in the Scan Position Offset Calibration. Each scan is conducted at the midpoint of the triangle where the step distance is one half the length of both right angle triangle sides. The first and primary alignment pattern is the 300 μ m triangle which is called the 150 μ m alignment pattern. It has this name because the scan traverses the triangle at it midpoint where the distance is 150 μ m. The second is the 1000 μ m (1 mm) triangle which is called the 500 μ m alignment pattern because its midpoint scan distance is 500 μ m. It is used when the 150 μ m scan fails to locate the 300 μ m triangle.

When making this calibration, first use the 300 μ m triangle to complete the 150 μ m scan. If the stylus offset is too great, the scan misses the triangle. If this happens, try the 1000 μ m (1 mm) triangle to complete the 500 μ m scan. If that is successful, retry the 300 μ m triangle.

If the 500 μ m scan missed the 1000 μ m triangle, the stylus needs to be physically realigned by an authorized KLA-Tencor service representative.





Step 22 Use the arrow

22. Use the linear movement arrow buttons (see Figure 4.29.) to locate one of the 150 µm alignment patterns with its crosshair alignment pattern at its left side. (See Figure 4.28.)



Figure 4.29 Aligning the Tool with Screen Crosshair

23. Click at the center of the Crosshair Pattern to align it with the screen crosshair. (See Figure 4.30.) The crosshair pattern should align precisely with the screen crosshair.







24. Click the **START** button located in the screen tool bar. (See *Figure 4.31*.)

The video image changes to side view as the stage moves to position the start of the scan on the beginning of the start pattern near the calibration triangle.

When the stylus has reached the beginning of the 150 μ m scan trace, the screen changes to the **Scan: _OFF150** window. The scan automatically begins.



Figure 4.32 Scan: _OFF150 Window

The scan can be viewed at the bottom right of the **Scan: _OFF150** screen as it progresses from left to right across the scan trace window, forming a linear image of the scanned surface. The Start pattern next to triangle is set up to direct the scan through the middle of the triangle using the **_OFF150** recipe. In a perfectly calibrated system, the scan trace goes directly through the center of the 300 μ m triangle creating a 150 μ m trace step. However, this is not a common occurrence for a system that has not yet been calibrated after a stylus change.

The system uses the step and the distance across the triangle to determine where the trace was performed and then automatically calculates the offsets.

Figure 4.33 Trace Path Through Upper Triangle





Figure 4.34 Data Analysis Window.

When the scan is complete, the **Data Analysis** window automatically replaces the **Scan: _OFF150** screen. The window contains a scan data trace as shown in *Figure 4.35*. If the scan was successful, the system detected the triangle and set cursors at the edges of the triangle for visual inspection. It is possible to observe the scan and determine, visually, where the trace is running through the triangle.



Figure 4.35 Scan Data Portion of the Analysis Window

In the bottom half of the window, the **Scan Offset Calibration Analysis** appears. In *Figure 4.36* the system has subtracted the Up Edge from the Down Edge and calculated the result to be 150.0 μ m. Using this analysis of the scan, the system makes a recommendation based upon its recognition of the **Stylus Alignment Tool** triangle pattern.

25. To accept the recommendation, ensure that Accept Current Calibration Result is chosen, then click on Take Selected Action. (See *Figure 4.36*.)



If the scan was recognized by the system, a recommendation to ACCEPT the calibration is displayed here.



If the trace misses the triangle or is unable to identify it, one of several messages can be displayed. If the message reads, "Unknown situation..." or is otherwise uncertain, perform the entire scan procedure again, this time using the 1000 μ m (1 mm) triangle and replacing the 150 μ m scan recipe with the 500 μ m scan recipe, _OFF500. If the 500 μ m scan is acceptable, perform the 150 μ m scan again. The results should be acceptable.



Figure 4.37 "Unknown Situation" Corrective Action

When the Triangle is Present, But System Does Not Find It. The message could also say that the scan might have caught the triangle and ask the user to choose either to accept it, change the location, or reject it. If the **Conclusion** box informs the user that the system either didn't find the triangle for sure or asks the user to check the trace for the presence of the triangle, it might be necessary to reset the measurement cursors. (See *Figure 4.38.*)

Figure 4.38 Pre Acceptance Analysis Screen

In this case, the system placed the identification cursors at the left edge of the trace, missing the triangle that is obviously displayed mid trace. (See *Figure 4.39* for resolution.)



1. If the triangle is obvious, reset the measurement cursors to the top edges of the triangle. To reset the measurement cursors, look in the top area over the graph, click and hold on the right cursor, then drag it to the top right corner of the step in the trace. Repeat for the left cursor, dropping it on the top left corner. (See *Figure 4.39.*)

Figure 4.39 Analysis Screen with Cursors Manually Placed

Click, hold and drag each cursor to the top edges of the step.



2. Once the measurement cursors are in position, click **Record** in the Scan Offset Calibration Analysis section of the screen. (See *Figure 4.40*.)



Figure 4.40 Scan Offset Calibration, Analysis Information Window

- 3. When the edges of the triangle have been recorded, choose Accept Current Calibration Result in the Possible Actions box. (See *Figure 4.40*.)
- 4. Click Take Selected Action. (See *Figure 4.40*.)

On rare occasions the system fails to recognize the triangle even though it is in the data set. The system might also make a determination that one of a number of detected features is the correct one. To determine if the triangle is in a given data set, review the scan data set of detected features at the bottom left of the Scan Offset Calibration Analysis portion of the screen. If the triangle is present then the scan calibration can be reset.

- Click on the scan feature data set that represents the triangle so that it highlights. In *Figure 4.41* the system choose feature number 1 and set its parameters in the Up Edge and Down Edge fields. (See *Figure 4.41*.) However, feature number 2 is 151.71 µm which is very near the expected scan distance of 150 µm. In this example the user would click on that feature to highlight it.
- 2. With the feature highlighted, click on **Set** to choose that feature as the triangle. The Up and Down parameters of the data set are recorded in the Up Edge and Down Edge fields. (See *Figure 4.41*.)

When More Than One

Possibility is Displayed

	Second: C	lick The Up and De	own parameters are displayed
	on Set=>.	in the Up Edge	and Down Edge fields
First : Click on the feature that represents the triangle.	Conclusion: This scan may have cauge may RESCAN using the s There are 0 Object(s) of Minimum Qua Up Down Width 1 250.025 251.025 1. 2 750.188 901.890 151	Scan Offset Calibration - 150 µm Option ph le triangle. You may ACCEPT the alibration decx/rd computed offset alificat in Width: 20.0 µm Up Edge Down Edge Construction - 150 µm Up Edge Down Edge Construction - 150 µm Construction - 150 µm Up Edge Down Edge Construction - 150 µm Set Cursor To Edge	(All Units in µm) on or, if the triangle was not caught, you Possible Actions © Accept Current Calibration Result. © Cancel Current Calibration. Take Selected Action

Figure 4.41 Hand Selecting the Triangle Data in Analysis Screen

- 1. Once the feature is chosen, choose Accept Current Calibration Result. (See *Figure 4.42.*)
- 2. Click Take Selected Action. (See Figure 4.42.)

Scan Offset Calibration Analysis Scan Offset Calibration - 150 µm Option (All Units in µm) This scan may have caught the triangle. You may ACCEPT the calibration or, if the triangle was not caught, you may RESCAN using the second computed offset Conclusion: Possible Actions There are 0 Object(s) of Minimum Qualification Width: 20.0 μm
 Set
 Up Edge
 Down Edg

 250.025
 251.025
 1.000
 Hecord
 1.
 [250.025
 [251.025]

 750.188
 901.890
 151.71
 Hecord
 1.
 [250.025]
 [251.025]
 Accept Current Calibration Result. Up Edge Down Edge Cancel Current Calibration. 1 Set Cursor To Edge Take Selected Action Step 1 Choose Step 2 Click on Take Accept Current Selected Action to accept Calibration Result. the calibration results.

Figure 4.42 Accepting Adjusted Scan Results

3. After the scan calibration has been accepted, the **Calibrations** screen returns. Close the Calibration screen.

XY VIEW SCREEN

INTRODUCTION

The name XY View comes from the function of the screen itself, which is for viewing the sample surface, and positioning a scan. The XY View screen also provides other tools required to set up and perform a scan.

The appearance of the video image depends on the zoom setting being used to view the sample surface and the current accuracy of the focus.

The P-15 has a zoom capability that allows the operator to zoom in and out to view the sample surface at different magnification levels.

This chapter describes:

- Starting the XY View Application on page 5-2
- Setting the Magnification on page 5-11
- Focusing the View on page 5-13
- *Positioning the Scan Site* on page 5-16
- Using Die Grid Navigation on page 5-19
- Using Blob Analysis (Center Object Search) on page 5-32
- *Aligning the Sample* on page 5-35

STARTING THE XY VIEW APPLICATION

Procedure

1. When the **Catalog** screen is first displayed, the **Sequence Recipe** list is in the Information Display window. To change to the **Scan Recipe** list, click on the **Scan Recipe** button. (See *Figure 5.1.*)



Figure 5.1 Scan Recipe Window in the Catalog Screen

 Once the Scan Recipe window is active, ensure that the desired scan recipe is highlighted by clicking on it. With the recipe highlighted, click the XY button to display the XY View screen. (See *Figure 5.1*.)



XY View Window Features

XY View Menu Bar

The Menu Bar contains the majority of the available screen function commands. Each function is explained in detail in this section.

Figure 5.3 XY View Screen Menu Bar



View Menu

 Table 5.1
 View Menu Description

View Menu	Description
	Focus Using the current magnification setting, this button causes the system to focus on the sample that is on the stage at the same time that the stylus is nulled on the sample surface.
	Video Controls Displays the Video Display Dialog Box.
Eocus Video Controls Save Image To File Print Image Display Center Object View Align Sample Zoom In Zoom Qut Beset Zoom Save Zoom Position	Save Image to File Displays the dialog box which set up the location of the file where the image is to be saved.
	Print Image Displays the dialog box for printing the image in the video portion of the screen.
	Display Center Object View This puts the center of the object being scanned at the screen crosshair.
	Align Sample Displays the dialog box used for setting up the angular rotation of the sample on the sample stage and initiates the automated procedure for aligning the sample to the video display.
Show <u>C</u> enter of Feature Show <u>E</u> nd of Feature	Zoom In Causes the optics to zoom in to a higher magnification.
	Zoom Out Causes the optics to zoom out to a lower magnification.
	Reset Zoom Resets the zoom position to "0" when the Zoom is active (position not saved).
	Save Zoom Position Displays a dialog box where the zoom position is set and locked so that it cannot be changed by the Zoom In and Zoom Out buttons.
	Show Start of Feature Displays, at the crosshair of the video display, the starting point of the scan.
	Show Center of Feature Displays, at the crosshair of the video display, the center of the scan on the sample surface.
	Show End of Feature Displays, at the crosshair of the video display, the end of the scan on the sample surface.
Die Grid Menu

Die Grid Menu	Description
	Load Displays the dialog box used to load a die grid pattern.
	Save As Saves the die grid pattern.
	Clear Die Grid Removes any die grid pattern on the video display window. [See <i>Clearing a Die Grid (Turn OFF Die</i> <i>Grid Navigation)</i> on page 5-30.]
Load Save As Clear Die Grid Clear Dropout Dies Clear Associated Dies	Clear Dropout Dies Blocks the dies from being scanned when a mouse cursor is placed over the die on the Sample Positioning Window and the SHIFT+LEFT MOUSE BUTTON is pressed.
Pattern Rec. Options Display <u>N</u> umbers Font	Clear Associated Dies Removes dies which were previously associated in a sequence recipe.
Move To Partial Dies	Pattern Rec. Options This displays the Load Die Grid dialog box. [See Loading a Die Grid (Turning ON Die Grid Navigation) for a Single Scan on page 5-28.]
	Display Numbers Displays the numbers on the Sample Positioning Window.
	Font Displays the font dialog box used to change the screen fonts.
	Move To Partial Dies Scans the partial die at the edge of the wafer perimeter, only when this feature is enabled. Normally, these partial dies cannot be scanned because of the circular wafer edge, but this feature allows them to be scanned.

Move Menu

|--|

Move Menu	Description
	Slow – Sets the XY stage to move in the slowest, or smallest increment, speed as defined in the Move Extents .
Slow <u>Medium</u> East Mous Eutopte	Medium – Sets the XY stage to move in medium, or intermediate increment, speed as defined in the Move Extents .
✓ <u>Precision Move with Cursor</u> <u>To Position</u>	Fast – Set the XY stage to move in fast, or largest increment, speed as defined in the Move Extents .
	Move Extents – Sets the increment (Slow, Medium, Fast) for the stage movement. Enter the μ m per click distance in each field for X/Y movement and the degrees in the Theta fields.
	<i>Figure 5.4</i> Move Extents Dialog Box
	Move Extent X/Y Theta Slow Move Extent: Image:
	Precision Move – Takes out any backlash in the lead screws.
	To Position – This displays the Move To Position dialog box. Enter the coordinates the stage is to move to. If a rotational move is used to reorient a feature already in view so it can be scanned in a different direction, also choose Rotate About Camera Position . Click OK to make the move.
	<i>Figure 5.5</i> Move To Position Dialog Box
	Move To Position × -151.5 × (μm) 151.5 Y (μm) 0 T (deg) Π Rotate About Camera Position

Direction Menu

Table 5.4 Direction Menu	
Direction Menu	Description
	Up – Moves the stage in the +Y direction away from the front door by one increment (as defined in Move Speeds for the set speed) per button click. Click and hold the button for continuous movement.
Up Down Left	Down – Moves the stage in the -Y direction toward the front door by one increment (as defined in Move Speeds for the set speed) per button click. Click and hold the button for continuous movement.
Hight East Z Up Ctrl+U Fast Z Down (Focus) Ctrl+D Botate Counterclock wise	Left – Moves the stage in the -X direction toward the left by one increment (as defined in Move Speeds for the set speed) per button click. Click and hold the button for continuous movement.
Rotate Clockwise	Right – Moves the stage in the +X direction toward the right by one increment (as defined in Move Speeds for the set speed) per button click. Click and hold the button for continuous movement.
	 Fast Z Up – Raises the measurement head away from the stage by one increment per button click. Click and hold the button for continuous movement. This is the same as clicking the Elev button.
	Fast Z Down (Focus) – Lowers the measurement head and sensor to the null position, and focuses the video image. The measurement head automatically lowers to the correct distance from the sample for real-time video. This is the same as clicking the Focus button.
	Rotate Counterclockwise – Rotates the stage in the theta counterclockwise direction by one increment (as defined in Move Speeds for the set speed) per button click. Click and hold the button for continuous movement.
	Rotate Clockwise – Rotates the stage in the theta clockwise direction by one increment per button click. Click and hold the button for continuous movement.

Actions Menu

Actions Menu	Description
Start Scan	Start Scan Starts the scan process.
View Scan	View Scan Changes to the View Scan window.

Sample Menu

Table 5.6 Sample Menu

Sample Menu	Description
	Manual Load Moves the stage towards the front door. This is used for loading wafers.
Manual Load	Load/Unload Not applicable for the P-15 system.
Load/Unioad Initialize Handler	Initialize Handler Not applicable for the P-15 system.
Pod Operations	Pod Operations Not applicable for the P-15 system.
	Change Configuration This brings up the Safe Area configuration box.

Vacuum Menu

Table 5.7 Vacuum Menu

Vacuum Menu	Description
✓ O <u>f</u> f O <u>n</u>	Off Not applicable for P-15 systems. The vacuum status is set using a manual switch next to the door.
	On Not applicable for P-15 systems. The vacuum status is set using a manual switch next to the door.

Stylus Menu

```
Table 5.8Stylus Menu
```

Stylus Menu	Description
<u>D</u> rop/Lift Distance	Drop/Lift Causes the stylus to pivot up. A check mark is visible while it is in the UP position. Click on it to release it back to its normal scanning position
	DistanceDisplays the Distance From Sample dialog box.This is the distance from the stylus to the samplesurface during scan positioning. Set the number inμm and click OK. The distance remains in effectuntil changed by the user.Figure 5.6Distance Dialog Box
	Distance IV

Blob Menu

|--|

Blob Menu	Description
Edit Binarization Threshold	Edit Binarization Threshold Activates the Blob Analysis capability when the Display Center Object View feature is selected from the View menu.
	This allows the user to draw a box around an object visible in the video image, and the stage moves to the center of that object using the image contrast to locate the object. The contrast value can be set from 0 to 255 with a typical range of 60 to 100.
	EXAMPLE : if selecting a dark object, set the threshold to a high value so that greater contrast is used to help distinguish the object from the surrounding area. [See <i>Using Blob Analysis (Center Object Search)</i> on page 5-32.]

Tool Bar Buttons_

 Table 5.10
 XY View window Tool Bar Buttons

Button	Description
SLOW	Sets the XY stage to move in small increments as set in Move Extents .
MED	Sets the XY stage to move in moderate increments as set in Move Extents .
FAST	Sets the XY stage to move in large increments as set in Move Extents .
1	Moves the stage in the +Y direction (away from the front door) by one increment (as set in Move Extents) per button click. Click and hold the button for continuous movement.
↓	Moves the stage in the -Y direction (toward the front door) by one increment (as set in Move Extents) per button click. Click and hold the button for continuous movement.
+	Moves the stage in the -X direction (toward the left) by one increment (as set in Move Extents) per button click. Click and hold the button for continuous movement.
\rightarrow	Moves the stage in the +X direction (toward the right) by one increment (as set in Move Extents) per button click. Click and hold the button for continuous movement.
ゥ	Rotates the stage in the theta counterclockwise direction by one increment (as set in Move Extents) per button click. Click and hold the button for continuous movement.
G	Rotates the stage in the theta clockwise direction by one increment (as set in Move Extents) per button click. Click and hold the button for continuous movement.
ELLEY	Raises the measurement head away from the stage by one increment per button click. Click and hold the button for continuous movement.
FOCUS	Lowers the measurement head containing the sensor assembly to the null position, with the stylus just above the surface, and focuses the video image.
ZOOM IN	Changes to a higher magnification with each click.
ZOOM OUT	Changes to a lower magnification with each click.
START	Starts the scan process.

Button	Description
* <u>*</u>	A toggle that lifts and drops the stylus.
MAN LOAD	Toggle button that moves the stage to and away from the Manual Load position. Before each movement, the measurement head moves to the set Z-height to protect the sensor assembly from accidental contact.

 Table 5.10
 XY View window Tool Bar Buttons (Continued)

SETTING THE MAGNIFICATION

Introduction

The system has an optical zoom function that allows the operator to view the sample surface at different magnifications for feature identification and scan placement.

If the system has Pattern Recognition operating, zooming in and out could prevent the system from performing accurately because the recognition function also takes into consideration the size of the image as well as its shape.

Changing the Magnification

Click the **ZOOM IN** or **ZOOM OUT** to change the magnification. Each click changes the magnification level in or out by a small amount.

(Alternative:

In the Menu bar click on **View** to display its menu. From the **View** menu, select either **Zoom In** or **Zoom Out** to change the magnification. Each click changes the magnification level in or out by an amount a little more than twice the size of the button icons.)

For systems using the Pattern Recognition option, the zoom function can greatly effect those system's ability to perform the recognition function. If the Zoom position is set and left at a particular zoom level, the system is dependable using the Pattern Recognition option.

Resetting the Zoom to "0.00"

If the zoom function has been used, it might be necessary to use the **Reset Zoom** to return the zoom magnification to exactly "**0.00**" in the Zoom field at the bottom right of the screen.

Click on **Reset Zoom** and the system automatically zooms out to the furthest position and sets the Zoom field to **0.00**.





Saving the Current Zoom Position

For systems operating with the Pattern Recognition option, it is extremely important that the Zoom position be *locked* so the system can perform the pattern recognition function properly. Saving the current zoom position is also called "zoom lock." This function relies on both shape and size for the recognition process to be effective. The most reliable way to secure the zoom position is to use the **Save Zoom Position** dialog box to set and lock the desired position.

Another reliable way is to leave the zoom feature at 0.00, then pattern recognition should work well. In this case, it is very important that, before the pattern recognition process is used, the operator remember to reset the zoom to 0.00.

- Check to ensure that the current Zoom position, displayed in the Zoom field at the bottom left of the screen, is the position that the zoomed magnification is to be frozen at. If so, proceed to the next step. If not, adjust the zoom (magnification) to the required level using the zoom icons or menu items.
- 2. To save the current zoom position, click on **Save Zoom Position** in the **View** menu. This opens the Save Zoom Position dialog box. (See *Figure 5.8*.)

Figure 5.8 View Menu in XY Vies Screen



Click **Reset Zoom** from the View menu to reset the **Zoom** to exactly **0.00**. The Save Zoom Position dialog opens with the current zoom position in the Zoom field.

- 3. Ensure that the zoom position in the dialog box **Zoom** field agrees with the **Zoom Position** in the screen display. (See *Figure 5.9*.)
- 4. Put a check in the Save Zoom Position check box. (See Figure 5.9.)

Figure 5.9 Save Zoom Position Dialog Box



5. Click **OK** to save the position and disable the zoom icons in the tool bar and the zoom menu items in the View menu. (See *Figure 5.9*.)

FOCUSING THE VIEW

Introduction

Focusing on the sample surface is controlled by a combination of the nulling process and the system focus knobs.

Nulling

Fast Approach

In the first phase of the nulling descent, the measurement head lowers the stylus at a higher speed until it reaches a preset level above the sample surface. The default level set in the registry is $1000 \,\mu\text{m}$ above the Lowest Elevator Position. If the stylus touches the surface during the fast approach phase of the descent, an error is generated. The error is not speed dependant.

If the proximity sensor and the proximity sensor offset is used during the descent, the stage moves to position the proximity sensor over the same location at which the stylus eventually touches the surface.

If the proximity sensor is enabled, the Fast Approach ends when either the proximity sensor indicates the approaching surface. If the proximity sensor is disabled, the Fast Approach ends when the head reaches 1000 μ m above the Lowest Elevator Position. The descent slows at this point and, if the Proximity Sensor Offset is applied, the system moves the stylus back over the contact point on the sample surface.

Slow Approach

This is the phase of the nulling descent in which the stylus contacts the sample surface. Even though this phase is called the Slow Approach, it is possible for the descent speed to be set to the same rate as the Fast Approach.

The Slow Approach ends when the stylus hits a surface and the stylus is pushed up above the horizontal position.

Final Adjustment

During the last phase of the nulling operation, the head moves upward very slowly until the stylus drops just barely below the horizontal position and slightly above the surface.

Focus

After the final adjustment to the head and stylus position, the system focusses on the surface.

After the null and focus procedure, if the sample surface is not in focus, the focus knobs can be used to bring the surface into focus. (This should only be required after stylus change.)

The purpose of focusing the view is to sharpen the image in the video window. If the focus is clear the first time, and the sample is flat, focus should be maintained each time the stage moves to another location on the same sample surface.

Proximity Sensor

The proximity sensor can be used in the transition between the Fast Approach and Slow Approach phases of the nulling procedure. The following restrictions apply to proximity sensor use:

- The proximity sensor works on optical principles and is therefore not for use with transparent surfaces. For transparent surfaces teach the Lowest Elevator Position and turn the proximity sensor off.
- The system accommodates the physical offset between the stylus and the proximity sensor by adjusting the stage position at the appropriated time before the scan procedure. The accommodation cannot be performed for measurements 15 mm or closer to the right hand side of the chuck. If measurements are to be taken at X-coordinate values that might fall within that restricted range, the Proximity Sensor Offset must be disabled. The proximity sensor can still be used, provided the sample is flat and not transparent.
- For small samples that are not transparent, the proximity sensor can be used in the nulling procedure provided that the offset has been correctly taught. The original offset was taught at the factory and should not be changed unless there is very good reason. Using the proximity sensor is especially convenient for sample with widely varying thickness between measurements, to avoid focussing errors, and to avoid repeated teaching of the Lowest Elevator Position.
- For samples having the same thickness (i.e., within ± 200 mm), disable the proximity sensor and rely on the Lowest Elevator Position. Since these samples have the same thickness, the Lowest Elevator Position does not need to be reset.

Focus the Optics – Top- or Side-View

1. Raise the measurement head.



CAUTION: Before lowering the head, be sure that the sample is under the center of the optics, that the stage is not significantly out of level, and that there are no physical obstacles.

2. Use the **Focus** button to null the stylus on the sample (use a patterned sample with easily defined features).



NOTE: If the Proximity Sensor is not enabled, the elevator is designed to slow its rate of descent to 10 μ m/sec when it reaches 1000 μ m above the **Lowest Elevator Position**.

3. Open the measurement chamber door and then the head door. (See *Figure 5.10*.)

Figure 5.10 MicroHead Measurement Head.



- 4. If the initial view requires focusing, turn the **Top-View Focus** knob to focus the top view. (See *Figure 5.11*)
- 5. Click the Stylus Drop-Lift icon to lower the stylus onto the sample surface.

Top-View Focus Knob 6. If the side view requires focusing, use the **Side-View Focus** knob to focus the side view. (See *Figure 5.11*)



Figure 5.11 Focusing the Optics (Dual-View Optics).

7. Test the Video Calibration after any mechanical refocusing event by clicking on a clearly definable feature and see if it lines up exactly with the screen crosshair. If not, perform the Video Calibration.

POSITIONING THE SCAN SITE

Introduction

The stage can be moved in the X, Y, and theta direction to orient an object image for scan positioning. The stage can be moved to reach any point on the sample surface within the Safe Area limits. (See *Safe Area Configuration* on page 11-21)

The stage moves incrementally in the following directions:

- The X direction moves the stage left and right
- The Y direction moves the stage forward and backward
- The theta direction rotates the stage clockwise and counterclockwise.

A common way to move the stage is to click on the arrow button that points in the direction that the stage is to move. Notice that the arrow points in the direction the stage moves and not in the direction that the image moves in the field of view.



NOTE: When using the toolbar arrow buttons, the image appears to wiggle as it stops. This is a normal part of the procedure designed to eliminate the slight mechanical backlash in the stage movement that could make precise positioning difficult.

Figure 5.12 shows the stage coordinate system (SEMI Standard M20-92) used by the Profiler. The X and Y coordinates relative to the center of the measurement area are displayed in the current stage coordinate area of the XY View window. The travel area of the stage is limited to a circle 210 mm (8.2 in.) in diameter. (See *Figure 5.12*).



Figure 5.12 Coordinate System of the KLA-Tencor Profiler Stage

Scan Site Positioning Procedure

- 1. After the sample is loaded on the stage and the stage returned to the scan position under the stylus, click **FOCUS**.
- 2. Use one or more of the following methods to locate a scan site. (See Table 5.11.)

Table 5.11 Locating a Scan Site

Movement Required	Movement Method
To make a large move across the sample surface, use the Sample Navigation Window (See <i>Figure 5.14</i> .)	Sample Navigation Window – The navigation circle represents the stage area. Click the location on the Sample Navigation Window to move to the corresponding location on the sample. (See <i>Figure 5.14.</i>)
Move to a different site in the current Video Display	Video Display Window – Click the desired site in video display window. (See <i>Figure 5.14</i> .)
Window (See Figure 5.14.)	The site moves so that the video crosshair are centered on the chosen location.

Movement Required	Movement Method	
Move in increments across the sample using the Video Display	Arrow Buttons Positioning – Click the Fast , Medium , or Slow buttons (move extents) to change the stage movement increments. (See <i>Figure 5.13</i> .)	
Window to locate a feature or scan site.	With the cursor over the arrow button, click for one move of the distance defined by the move extents setting. Click and hold to start and continue the stage movement in increments defined by the move extents. Release to stop the stage movement.	
	NOTE: The incremental distance represented by the Fast, Medium, and Slow buttons can be changed by choosing Move Extents from the Move menu. The Move Extent dialog box appears in which the new speeds for each button can be entered.	
Precision positioning using the Stylus Drop-Lift	Stylus Drop-Lift Positioning – After the null is complete, click the Stylus Drop-Lift button. This changes the optics to side-view with the stylus in the down position. Click on the scan site beginning point. Repeat if necessary until the stylus is at the desired starting point of the scan.	

Table 5.11Locating a Scan Site





video Display Window

USING DIE GRID NAVIGATION

Introduction

When scanning a wafer, the *die grid navigation features* can be used to teach scan and sequence sites by die location rather than by stage coordinates.

3. Click the Stylus Drop-Lift button to null the stylus on the sample and confirm the

Die grid navigation is composed of two components: Die Grid Navigation Window; and Die Window.

The Die Grid Navigation Window presents a representation of the die positions on the wafer surface. (See the Die Grid Navigation Window in *Figure 5.15.*) The small highlighted rectangle, in the upper right quadrant of the die matrix, represents the die currently being scanned. Each time a new die is chosen, the scan is performed on the same position in that die. (See Die Window in *Figure 5.15.*)

The Die Window is designed to pinpoint the location of the feature to be scanned on each die. (See the Die Window in *Figure 5.15.*) The cursor in the rectangle represents the location on the die where the feature to be scanned resides. To move to another scan position in the die, click on the new position in the Die Window box.



Figure 5.15 Teach Die Grid Screen with Loaded Die Grid

Once a die grid pattern is loaded, the Die Grid Navigation Window appears in the Teach Scan screen (except in calibration procedures), Teach Sequence Site screen, and Teach Blob Analysis screen.

Die Grid windows (see *Figure 5.15*) differ from standard Teach windows in three aspects:

- **Die Grid Navigation Window**—replaces the Sample Navigation Window. (See *Figure 5.2.*) Click in the desired die grid to quickly move the corresponding die into the field of view in the Video Display Window.
- **Die Window**—for positioning a feature in the field of vision within the die itself. Click in the desired region to quickly move that area of the die into the field of view.
- Grid information area—contains wafer and current die coordinates, wafer diameter, and die size.

In making it more convenient to position scans on a wafer, Die Grid Navigation provides the following options:

- Mask out the dies that are not to be measured. Masked dies appear blacked out on the Die Grid Navigation Window, providing visual reference points.
- Display the die coordinates on the Die Grid Navigation window and even change the font and size of the numbers.
- Show the partial dies on the edge of the wafer.

Creating a Die Grid

Introduction

To use a die grid, one must be created using a sample with clearly defined identical dies, equally spaced. Once created, it can be used whenever measurements are being made on samples which are identical to the one used to make the die grid. Numerous die grids can be created, stored, and loaded as they are needed.

Wafer alignment on the sample stage is critical to the systems ability to consistently locate dies on the wafer. It must be precisely placed with it X- Y- orientation identical to that of the die grid. This can be accomplished by using a precision locator on the sample stage. The loaded die grid pattern is accurate only as long as the wafer is not moved after the initial die grid alignment procedure. This means that the vacuum must be turned on when the wafer is loaded and not turned off until the wafer is unloaded. If the wafer is moved, the die grid must be reloaded, a procedure which realigns the wafer dies with the die grid.

The die grid is created by establishing its size and position on a wafer, and identifying a unique and distinguishable feature which the system can use to locate the same position on any die.

Teach a Die Grid

Creating a die grid is a user friendly procedure. Once the Teach Die Grid procedure is initiated, each step is prompted by a message at the bottom of the screen or next to the graphic.

1. Click on the **Scan Recipe** button at the top of the option list located at the left of the Catalog screen. (See *Figure 5.16*.)

	Profiler • (Cata Ele Edit Sample	alug) Vacuum Hgit Diagnostic ve 199						*Onli	ine/Local
Step 1 Click on the Scan			2D 3D						
Recipe button to open the list	Scan		200MM			_		_	~
of available scan recipes.	Hecthe	Recipe Path:	Recipe Name	Length (µm)	Sampling Rate (Hz)	Speed (µm/s)	Creation Date (yyyy-mm-dd)	Time	
	Scan	SCANRCP Class 2 Scans	_OFF150 _OFF500	500 1600	50 50	10 50	2001-04-06 2001-04-06	14:16 14:16	678
			STEPHTH 200KH	\$00 \$00 200	50 50 200	50 100	2001-04-06 2001-04-06 2001-03-24	13:38 13:40 11:37	
	Sequence		SUURA	500	200	100	2001-03-23	15:47	<u>s</u>
	Recipe								
	Sequence Data								
								*	
		1						<u> </u>	
			Print	Nes	Vaew	/ <u>M</u> odily	START	XY View	
								_	Clear Statue

Figure 5.16 Scan Catalog Screen

Click on the Die Grid button in the tool bar, or select Teach Die Grid from the File menu. (See *Figure 5.16.*)

The **Teach Die Grid** window appears with a warning about the automatic null feature of the Teach Die Grid procedure. (See *Figure 5.17.*)

Figure 5.17 Warning – Automatic Null



3. Click **OK** to continue with the procedure. (See *Figure 5.17*.)

4. In the **Teach Die Grid** screen, the procedure is prompted from the message display area at the bottom left of the screen. (See *Figure 5.18*.)

Figure 5.18 Teach Die Grid Screen

Ten on Try Hole Fe	const Consta Saubio 1480	an offer For Heb		_
SLOW HED FAST	↑ ↓ ← →	ଚାତା 🛣 🖤 ।		A
100µm/division				
Wafer coordinates X: 0.00 um	Die coordinates X: 0.00 um	Die size X: 0.00 um		
Y: 0.00 µm	Y: 0.00 µm	Y: 0.00 µm		
2: 0.00 µm. g: 0.00 deg	0 mm		OK Cancel	

Step 4 The message prompt, here under the graphic, informs the operator of procedures as they occur and operator requirements.

Notice in *Figure 5.18* that the message prompt tells the operator to place a specific sized wafer on the stage and then click on **OK**. The system is configured to run a specific sized wafer. It is important that only that size wafer be used.

- 5. Obtain the wafer to be used in the teach die grid procedure
- 6. Click MAN LOAD to move the stage to the door.
- 7. Open the door and load the wafer onto the precision locator. (If there is no precision locator, have one installed before continuing with this procedure.)
- 8. Turn **ON** the vacuum using the switch located at the left inside edge of the door.
- 9. Close the door and click **MAN LOAD** to send the stage back under the measurement head.



10. Click on **OK** when all variables are correct.

Figure 5.19 Teach Die Grid - Teach First Position

- 11. Teach the upper left inside corner of the die: (follow the instructions on the screen)
 - Position the die image using the arrow buttons so that the upper left corner of the die is in the field of view.
 - Position the mouse cursor at the left inside corner of the die, as indicated in the *Figure 5.19* illustration, and click.

Step 12 Use the arrow buttons to locate a distinct feature. Use the

small or too large.



Figure 5.20 Teach Die Grid - Teach Feature

12. Teach a pattern in the die:

Figure 5.21

- Using the arrow buttons, locate a feature that is present in every die. The pattern should be distinct from other nearby features.
- Click and drag to draw a box around the feature. Start at the upper left corner and drag across the feature so that it is centered in the box when the mouse button is released.

The instrument centers the pattern in the image crosshairs twice. The Wafer Data dialog box appears. (See Figure 5.21):



Step 13 If the exact die size is known, highlight the variable box for each dimension and enter the value. Leave it 0 if the system is required to determine the size.

Step 14 When all variables have been set, click OK to continue.



Wafer Data Dialog Box

This number represents the distance from the left wafer edge that the dies start. The distance is measured in full die widths, in this case, 2.

- 13. Verify and correct the wafer data and type in die width and height if known.
 - To *teach* the die size, leave **Die width** and **Die height** at **0**.
 - Left die number tells the instrument how far from the left edge to set its reference point. The value indicates the reference distance in the number of full die widths from the edge.
- 14. After making any required adjustments, click OK.

If the die width and height were not entered, the instrument continues to the third position in the Teach Die Grid sequence:

Figure 5.22 Teach Die Grid - Lower Right Corner

🖌 Teach Die Grid		*Online/Local
<u>√</u> iew Die <u>G</u> rid <u>M</u> ove <u>I</u>	<u>Direction Actions Sample Vacuum Stylus Blob Help</u>	
SLOW MED FAST		DOM START - MAN LOAD
	Step 15 Use the arrow buttons to move the field of view to the lower right corner of the die and click on the outside corner.	Teach the lower right outside corner of a die
.00µm/division		
Vafer coordinates (: 282.81 µm (: 2556.24 µm (: 46340.73 µm (: 0.00 deg	Die coordinates Die size X: 0.00 µm X: 0.00 µm Y: 0.00 µm Y: 0.00 µm Wafer diameter 0.00 µm OK Cancel	Notice the message, instructing the operator.
		Clear Statu

- 15. Use the arrow buttons to move the die image so the lower right outside corner of the die is visible. Move the mouse cursor to the lower right outside corner of the die and click on it to teach the position.
 - The stage moves to various dies on the wafer, locating the pattern taught in **Step 12** The taught image appears in the navigation window with a comment underneath it that advises the operator which die is being checked. (See *Figure 5.23*.)

🐺 Profiler - [1	Feach D	ie Grid]						X
⊻iew Die <u>G</u> rid	<u>M</u> ove	<u>D</u> irection	Actions	<u>S</u> ample Va	i <u>c</u> uum S <u>t</u> ylus j	<u>B</u> lob <u>H</u> elp		
SLOW MED	FAST	1	1 (+	- →	ちつ		ZOOM Z	ZOOM START MAN LOAD
	-]	.5	10,	1			Computing the die size Moving to the pattern location in the right adjacent die
Wafer coor X: 10309.1 Y: 5287.6	linate: L2 µm 38 µm	5	Die co X: Y:	ordinates 0.00 µm 0.00 µm	D3 X: Y:	e size 9976.37 µm 9975.55 µm		The feature appears in the navigation window, above the text explaining the current system activity
Z: 48655.2	L2 µm 39 deg		Wafer 200 mm	diameter		ОКС	ancel	dourny.
To abort nulling	press <sp< td=""><td>acebar> or (</td><td>click mou</td><td>se button!</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td>Empty Clear Status</td></sp<>	acebar> or (click mou	se button!				Empty Clear Status

Figure 5.23 Teach Die Grid - With Feature in Navigation Window

16. When the system completes its check, the die grid is applied. The Teach Die Grid screen changes its die grid navigation window to reflect the current die grid configuration on the wafer. (See *Figure 5.24*.) The taught die appears in dark blue. The operator is prompted to click **OK** to save the die grid.



Figure 5.24 Teach Die Grid - Die Grid Simulation in Navigation Window

At the bottom of the die grid navigation window is a representation of the die grid, which appears as a bounded white rectangle. The taught feature is pictured a small bounded box appearing in its relative position in the die. This makes it easier for the operator to locate the feature if a visual search is necessary.

17. Click **OK** (bottom center of the screen) to save the die grid.

A save dialog box appears. (See *Figure 5.25*.)

Figure 5.25 Save Die Grid As Dialog Box

Save Die Grid As ? X Save in: 🔄 diegrid - E 🔊 amat.die 🔊 N-H-Ld.die 🔊 diegrid.die 🛋 stagemap.die Step 21 After 🔊 INTC-Resist.die 🔊 thinfilm.die completing Step 🔊 INTC-SiGe.die 18 - Step 20, 🔊 INTC-W.die 🔊 Marcus.die click on Save. File <u>n</u>ame <u>S</u>ave Save as type: Data files (*.die) • Cancel

- 18. Choose the drive and directory for storage of the die grid file. (See *Figure 5.25*.)
- **19**. Ensure that the proper file format is chosen for saving the die grid file. Click on the **Save As Type:** menu arrow to display its menu and choose the required format from the menu. (See *Figure 5.25*.)
- 20. Type a name for the die grid in the File name: variable box. (See Figure 5.25.)
- 21. Click on Save. (See Figure 5.25.)

The extension ***.die** is supplied automatically. Die Grid Navigation is enabled with the new die grid applied. *Using Die Grid Navigation* on page 5-19 describes how to use Die Grid Navigation with sequences.

Loading a Die Grid (Turning ON Die Grid Navigation) for a Single Scan

1. Ensure that the wafer is in place on the stage. It must have the same pattern as that of the die grid being loaded.



CAUTION: It is very important that the wafer is placed in the same orientation that the die grid was taught. If not, the system cannot find the dies. Use a precision locator to place the wafer in the proper orientation.

2. In the XY View, Scan Editor, or Sequence Editor windows, click on Die Grid from the menu bar. (See *Figure 5.26*.)

where the die grid is to be saved by clicking in the down arrow and selecting the appropriate directory.

Step 18 Choose the location

Step 20 Type in the name of the new die grid.

Step 19 Choose the format for the die grid to be saved in by clicking the down arrow and choosing the appropriate format. It should be Data files (*.die).

Step 2 Click on Die Grid to display its menu.	Portifier - (Sequence Editor - "UNTIFICATION Dependence (Into Continuent and	
Step 3 Click on Load to display the Load Die Grid dialog box.	Base Apple -0.23 5001M Darga >> 5001M Darga >> -077150 2001M -077150 -0.23 -077150 -0.23 -077150 -0.23 -077150 -0.23 -07160 -0.23 -07160 -0.23 -07160 -0.23 -07160 -0.23 -071710 -0.23 -07180 -0.23 -07180 -0.23 -07180 -0.23 -07180 -0.23 -07180 -0.23 -07180 -0.23 -07190 -0.23 -07190 -0.23 -071910	
	Ciex: Ciex:	Status Status

Figure 5.26 Sequence Editor with Die Grid Menu

- 3. Click on Load to display the Load Die Grid dialog box. (See *Figure 5.27*.)
- 4. In the Load Die Grid dialog box, double-click on the name of the die grid to be used. This displays die grid name in the File Name display box.





5. Click on **Open** to load the die grid.

The system nulls the stylus and begins to search for the pattern that is displayed on the right side of the screen. After it successfully locates the test pattern, the die grid is loaded.

Die Grid navigation is now active and the die grid selected is applied.

Clearing a Die Grid (Turn OFF Die Grid Navigation)

- 1. Go to the Teach Scan window.
- 2. Click the Die Grid menu, and select Clear Die Grid. (See Figure 5.28.)

Figure 5.28 Die Grid Menu From the Menu Bar



Standard navigation is active again.

Navigating Across the Wafer Using the Die Grid

- 1. Load a die grid using the procedure in *Loading a Die Grid (Turning ON Die Grid Navigation) for a Single Scan* on page 5-28)
- 2. Die Grid Navigation uses the representation of the sample that appears in the Sample Navigation Grid at the right of the XY View screen. To move the to a specific die, click on its location. The system moves the stage to that die and focuses on the feature. The feature's position is indicated in the die representation below the Sample Navigation Grid.



Figure 5.29 Die Grid Navigation

Enabling the Dropout Die Option

Go to the **Teach Scan** window, and press the **SHIFT** key while clicking the dies in the Die Grid Navigation Window that are to be dropped out. These dies are not scanned.

The die is blacked out. To restore a dropped out die, click it again.

Clearing Dropout Dies From the Grid

From the **Die Grid** menu, click on **Clear Drop Out Dies**. The dies are restored to availability for scan purposes.

Moving to Partial Dies

- 1. From the Die Grid menu select Enable Partial Die to enable the Partial Die option.
- 2. Go to the **Teach** window, click on **Die Grid**, then click on **Move To Partial Dies**. (See *Figure 5.28*.)
- 3. In the Die Grid Navigation Window, click on the partial die to navigate to it.

Displaying Grid Numbers in the Die Grid Navigation Window

From a **Teach Scan/Site** window, click on **Die Grid**, then click on **Display Numbers**. (See *Figure 5.28*.)

If the numbers are too small to see, increase the size of the Die Grid Navigation Window by clicking and dragging the window's vertical separator bar to the left.

To Change the Font and Color of the Grid Numbers

- 1. Go to a **Teach Scan/Site** window, click on **Die Grid**, click on **Font**. A standard font dialog box appears.
- 2. Select the font attributes desired and click **OK**.

USING BLOB ANALYSIS (CENTER OBJECT SEARCH)

Introduction

Blob, or Center Object Search, locates features by their mass distribution (general shape), which might not be apparent from the two-dimensional video image. To use Center Object Search, first store the image of the object by teaching it. The instrument compares the stored image with features within its search area, looking for a similar mass distribution. When the instrument finds a similar object, it positions the scan, orienting the center of the scan line or scan area (3D) with the center of the object.

Center Object Search works best with features that are rounded or conical.

Starting Blob Analysis

1. With the object in question displayed in the XY View video screen click on View to display its menu.

	Figure 5.30 XY View Screen – View Menu	
Step 1 Click on View to	Profiler - (Feach Center of Object) Vorw: Die Gid Move: Direction Active: Sande Vaguar: Splat. Bibb. H10	*Online/Local
Display its Menu.	Econ Yiden Controlt. Saver Image: To Fig Part Image: An Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna	
Step 2 Choose Display	Digday Senter Used Ver	
Center Object View from	Zoom Jn Zoom Qut	
the View menu.	Beset Zoom Save Zoom Position	
	Show Carl of Feature Show Carl of Feature Show Cont of Feature	
	Ноde: XV X: 0.00 µm V: 0.00 µm Z: 0.00 µm	
	0: 0.00 deg Zooa: 0.00	
		OK Cancel Clear Status

2. Select **Display Center Object View** from the **View** menu. (See *Figure 5.31*)

The Teach Center Object window appears. (See Figure 5.31)

3. In the Video Display, locate the object to be scanned.

Figure 5.31 Teach Center Object Window



4. Click and drag the cursor box around the object, placing its center dot on the object's center of mass.

The instrument positions the object in the center of the video image.

The instrument uses pattern recognition to analyze the object. The object's pattern is stored with the recipe and made available each time the recipe is used with Display Center Object View checked.

If the instrument is having trouble finding the object, it might help to edit the binarization threshold, that is, change the level of contrast the instrument uses in recognizing the object. (See *Changing the Level of Contrast* on page 5-34.)

Changing the Level of Contrast

1. Click the **Blob** menu and select **Edit Binarization Thresholds**. (See *Figure 5.32* and *Table 5.9 on page 5-9*.)



Figure 5.32 Teach Center of Object Screen

The Select Object Type dialog box appears. (See *Figure 5.33*):

Figure 5.33 Select Object Type Dialog Box

Choose Object Type	×
C Light Object	
Dark Object	
Threshold: 60	
Cancel	

• If **Dark Object** is selected, raise the threshold.

A threshold of **0** accepts only objects of very high contrast—black objects against a white background. The highest threshold, **256**, accepts a very low contrast object—gray object against a lighter background.

• If Light Object is selected, lower the threshold.

A threshold of **0** in this case recognizes very low contrast objects—gray objects against a darker background. A threshold of **256** recognizes high contrast objects—very bright objects against a very dark background.

2. Click **OK** to accept the settings and close the dialog box.

ALIGNING THE SAMPLE

Introduction

This procedure aligns the sample image with the X-axis of the view screen using a straight feature on the sample. Two methods for accomplishing this, each of which rotate the stage (theta movement) to accomplish the alignment, are detailed in the following sections. With the sample features aligned with the X-axis, more accurate scans can be taken and die grid navigation is more accurate.

Procedure

Aligning the Sample with the Instrument

This procedure assumes that the sample is already on the sample stage and ready for alignment. The sample must have a straight, easily discernible feature that can be used to aligned the sample features with the X-axis of the XY view screen.

1. Click on the **FOCUS** button in the tool bar. The stylus nulls on the sample surface and the sample image comes into focus.

Figure 5.34 Arrow Button Movement - Scan Offset Calibration

Step 1 Click on the FOCUS button to lower the head and focus on the sample.



2. Using the linear movement arrow buttons, locate the center of the feature to be used for alignment. (See *Figure 5.34*.)



CAUTION: It is very important that the chosen feature be such that it lies in a straight line across the X-axis of the sample. A thin line is best for use in the alignment procedure.



NOTE: The arrows move the stage not the optics.

3. Use the arrow buttons to approximately center the screen crosshair in the center of the feature. (Or, move the cursor to the center of the feature and click. This should move the crosshair to that location.)

Sample.

4. Click on View in the tool bar to display its menu. In the menu, click on Align Sample. (See *Figure 5.35*.) This sets up the Alignment Sample procedure which aligns the XY axis of the screen with the chosen feature.



Align Sample Procedure - Scan Offset Calibration Figure 5.35

5. A dialog box appears requesting input of the intended alignment angle. The default is **0** which aligns the feature with the X-axis after the procedure is complete. Click on **OK** in the dialog box to accept the **0** value. (See *Figure 5.36*.)



Step 5 Click on OK to accept the "0" angle alignment.	Alignment Angle				
	Alignment Angle:)egrees		
	ОК	Cancel	Help		

- 6. Using the **right** arrow button (\rightarrow) , scroll across the feature to the left portion of the feature. Stay close to the feature, and stop when a reasonable distance has been covered (or at the end of the feature if it is small).
- 7. Place the crosshair cursor on a portion of the feature that is easily duplicated at its other end and click with the left mouse button. The system performs adjustments which align the screen crosshair to the feature at the point of contact.

- 8. The message prompt displays at the bottom left of the screen, "**Press OK to** accept the first alignment position." Click **OK**, at the bottom right of the screen, to accept the first alignment position.
- 9. Using the left arrow button (←), scroll across the center of the feature (starting point). Stay close to the feature, and stop when the sample has move a significant enough distance to give the software a long interval over which to align the sample with the X-axis. Place the crosshair cursor over the same portion of the feature that was used to set the first position and click with the left mouse button. The system performs final adjustments, aligning the feature with the XY axis.
- 10. The message prompt displays "**Press OK to accept the second alignment position**." Click **OK**, at the bottom right of the screen, to accept the second alignment position.
- 11. After the adjustments have been completed by the system, the message prompt at the bottom of the screen indicates that the **OK** button must be clicked to accept the new alignment adjustment. Click **OK** (bottom right of screen) to accept or click **Cancel** to run a new alignment angle calculation.

This completes the Align Sample procedure.

Manual Alignment of the Sample

The sample can be aligned manually using the XY view screen in conjunction with the theta (rotational) movement arrow buttons on the tool bar.

- 1. Follow Step 1 through Step 3 in Aligning the Sample with the Instrument.
- 2. Use the theta movement arrows in the tool bar (in conjunction with the other arrow buttons as necessary) to rotate the chosen feature until it aligns with the X-axis on the XY view screen.
 - a. Click the 🖸 button for counterclockwise rotation.
 - b. Click the 🖸 button for clockwise rotation.

The Theta movement buttons may rotate the image past the point required to align the sample features with the X-axis. If this happens, the following adjustments to the theta movement can be made:

i. Check the Speed Setting in the Move menu. In the tool bar at the top of the XY view screen, click on MOVE to display the menu. (See *Figure 5.37.*) Three speeds (which are actually movement increments) are available: Slow, Medium and Fast. If the image always rotates past the X-axis, refine the movement by moving to the next slower movement. If the Slow setting still does not allow alignment, move to step *ii*.



ii. The amount of rotation in the theta arrow buttons is set in degrees in the Move Extents dialog box with each setting (Slow, Medium, or Fast) having its own rotation in degrees.



There are three movement				
speeds available in the Move				
menu. All three are defined in the				
Move Extents dialog box. For				
each 100 μm the stage moves 1°.	-			

EXAMPLE: In the **Fast Move Extent** box is set to 300. This means a 3° movement with each click on a theta arrow.

Move Extent			×
Slow Move Extent:	×/Υ 1 μm	Theta 1 degr.	OK
Medium Move Extent:	100 µm	2 degr.	Cancel
Fast Move Extent:	300 µm	5 degr.	

Check the Slow Move Extent box and set it as low as 0.01. Click on OK to set the new speed.

iii. In the XY view screen, click on Move and choose Slow. (See *Figure 5.37.*) The theta movement should now be small enough for proper alignment.